# Handbook

Jacopo Tissino

July 21, 2019

Abstract
Somewhat syntetic summaries of courses whose exams I had to prepare. Green boxes are for missing or as of yet unclear parts, blue boxes are for personal additions.

# **Contents**

1	Qua	intum Mechanics 7
	1.1	Definitions
		Spectrum
		Pure State
		Expectation value
		Lebesgue-Stieltjes Measure
		Probability measure
		Abstract probability measure
		Fluctuations
		Eigenstate
		Vector ray
		$L^2$
		Abstract Hilbert space
		Linear functionals
		Distance in $\mathcal{H}/\mathbb{C}_0$
		Adjoint of an operator
		Symmetric operators
		Self-adjoint operators
		Projectors
		Unitary operators
		Spectral Family
		Probability density function
		Gelfand Triple
		Mixed State
		Representations
		Lie group
		Lie Algebra
		Universal covering group
		Experimental measurement
		Parity
		Compatibility
		Families of observables
		Tensor product
		Symmetries
		Angular momentum
		Philosophical principles
	1.2	Axioms
		States
		Observables
		Expectation value

	Time evolution	13
	Von Neumann projection	13
1.3	Theorems	13
	Riesz-Markov	13
	Spectral families	13
	Completeness	14
	Wigner	14
	Bargman	14
	Stone	14
	Uncertainty principle	14
	Compatibility	15
	Kato-Rellich	15
	Bloch	15
	Perturbation theory	15
1.4	Lemmas and observations	16
	Probability function	16
	Symmetric operators	16
	On self-adjointness	16
	Domain of H	16
	Invariance of spectrum	17
	Norm of operators	17
	On residual spectrum	17
	Probability measure in diagonal form	17
	Heisenberg approach, and Poisson brackets	17
	Probability current	17
	Tensor product basics	18
		18
	A matrix identity	18
	Representation of translations	18
	Representation of rotations	
	Properties of angular momentum	18 19
		19 19
	Spin	
1 5	Composition of angular momenta	20
1.5	Specific problems	20
	Wavepackets and constant potentials	20
	General 1D potentials, qualitatively	21
	Harmonic oscillator	21
	Two-particle systems and Keplero	21
	Landau levels	23
	Scattering	23
	Nonstationary case	23
	Particle swaps	24
	Aharonov-Bohm	25
	EPR	25
Nuc	lear physics	27
2.1	Introduction	27
2.1	Nuclear density	27
2.2	Waterdrep model	2/

	Volume term					 				 			29
	Surface term					 				 			29
	Coulomb term					 				 			29
	Asymmetry term												30
	Pairing term												31
	SEMF												31
	Mass parables												31
	Specular nuclei												32
2.4	Fermi gas model												33
<b></b> 1	Hypotheses												33
	1D infinite well												33
													34
	3D potential well												
	Fermi sea												34
	Isospin												35
	Average kinetic energy												35
2.5	Nuclear fission												35
	Ellipsoid deformations												35
	Nuclear fission												36
	Neutron capture causing change in Z					 				 			36
	Neutron capture causing fission					 				 			36
2.6	Nuclear Fusion					 							37
	Coulomb barrier					 				 			37
2.7	Deuton					 				 			38
	Spin coupling					 				 			38
2.8	Shell model												39
	Evidence												39
	Parabolic potential												39
	Woods-Saxon potential												39
	Spin-orbital correction												39
	Other corrections												39
	Excitations	 ٠	•	•	 •	 	•	•	 •	 	•	•	39
	How to calculate the ground state												40
2.9	Collective model												40
													41
	α decay												42
2.11	β decay												
	Fermi theory												42
	Fermi's golden rule												43
	State density												43
	Calculation of $\lambda$												43
	Fermi-Kurie plot												43
	Calculating the matrix element		•		 •	 	•	•	 •	 			44
	Transition types					 							44
2.12	$\gamma$ decay					 				 			44
	Selection rules					 				 			45
	Emitted power					 				 			45
	Weisskopf estimations												45
	Experimental methods												45
2.13	Matter and radiation												46

		Cross sections
		Photoelectric
		Compton
		Pair production
		$\alpha$ particle energy transfer
		Bethe-Bloch
		Range
3	Qua	ntum Information
	3.1	The basics
		Qubit
		Entanglement
	3.2	Quantum gates
		Hadamard
		Phase
		Control not
		Control phase
		Binary function unitarity
		Parallelism
	2.2	0
	3.3	
	3.4	Fidelity
	3.5	Quantum teleportation
	3.6	Quantum interferometry
		Beam splitter
		Bomb detection
	3.7	Zeno effect
		Repeated measurements
		An example of nonunitary evolution
	3.8	Non-unitary evolution
		An example of a nonhermitian Hamiltonian
	3.9	Implementation of quantum gates
		3.9.1 NOT gate
		3.9.2 CNOT gate
	3.10	Density matrices
		Properties
		Time evolution of a density matrix
		Pure states
		Examples of density matrices
		Composite systems
	3.11	Correlations
		Schmidt decomposition
		Correletions for separable states
		Purification
	3 13	Kraus representation
	0.10	1
	2 11	Kraus representations
	J.1 <del>4</del>	
		Weak measurements

	3.14.1 POVMs	55
3.15	Quantum channels	66
	An example of decoherence by interaction	66
		66
		67
		67
		<u>5</u> 7
		58
		58
3.16	0 1 0	59
0.10	$\mathbf{I}$	59
3 17	1	70
5.17		70
	~	70
		70 70
2 10		70 71
	0	
	1	71
3.20		73
		73
		73
	~	74
	T	74
3.21	1 /	74
	0	74
	1 /	74
	Quantum Noiseless coding: Schumacher's theorem	75
3.22	Entanglement measurements	75
	Entanglement of formation	75
	Concurrence	75
3.23	Quantum algorithms	76
	3.23.1 Oracle interrogation	76
	<i>n</i> -qubit case	76
	3.23.2 Grover	77
	Arbitrary $n$	77
		78
		78
		78
		79
		79
		30
	$\sigma$	30
	1	30
		31
	1	31
		31
	71	31 32
	0	33
	0	
	Spectroscopic method	33

	Quantizing it	84
3.24	Error mitigation	84
	Classical error correction	85
	Trying to quantize it	85
	3.24.1 3-qubit bit-flip code	85
	3.24.2 3-qubit phase-flip code	86
	3.24.3 9-qubit Shor code	86
	Example	86
3.25	Time-dependent perturbation theory	86
	Example	88
	3.25.1 Fermi's golden rule	88
	Sinusoidal perturbation	88
	Constant perturbation	89
3.26	How to build a quantum computer	89
	Di Vincenzo criteria	89
	3.26.1 Trapped ions	90
	Gates	90
	3.26.2 Superconductive qubit	90
3.27	Laboratory experiences	91
	3.27.1 Photon indivisibility	91
	Setup	91
	Parametric down-conversion	91
	Theoretical considerations: wave vs particle	91
	3.27.2 Experimental Bell violation	92
	Half-wave plate	92
	Polarizing beamsplitter	93
	CHSH violation	93
3.28	Distances in state space	93
	3.28.1 Telling states apart	93
	Measurements	95
	Bhattacharyya distance	96
	Infinitesimal distance	97
	Parameter estimation	98
	Fischer information for pure states	100
	3.28.2 Quantum Fischer metric	100
	Gap-less Hamiltonians	104
	3.28.3 XY model	104

## Chapter 1

## **Quantum Mechanics**

### 1.1 Definitions

**Spectrum** (of an observable  $\hat{A}$ ): it is the set of values we can obtain by measuring it, denoted as  $\sigma(\hat{A}) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$ .

$$\sigma(A) = \left\{ a \in \mathbb{R} : \inf_{\psi \in D(A)} \Delta A_{a,\psi} = 0 \right\}$$
(1.1.1)

where  $0 \in D(A)$  is not considered when computing the infimum.

**Continuous and discrete** The *discrete spectrum*  $\sigma_d(A)$  is the subset of  $\sigma(A)$  of all the a such that  $\exists \psi : \Delta A_{a,\psi} = 0$ . It is always countable because of the separability of the space. The *continuous spectrum*  $\sigma_c(A)$  consists of its complementary in  $\sigma(A)$ .

**Mathematical definition** The spectrum of an operator *A* can be alternatively defined as:

$$\sigma(A) = \left\{ a \in \mathbb{C} : (A - a\mathbb{1})^{-1} \notin \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}^n) \right\}$$
 (1.1.2)

And we have:

- 1. The discrete spectrum, where there exists an eigenvector for A corresponding to a;
- 2. The continuous spectrum, where  $A a\mathbb{1}$  can be inverted in a dense domain, but its inverse is unbounded;
- 3. The residual spectrum, where neither condition holds  $(A a\mathbb{1})$  is not invertible in a dense domain).

**Pure State** Maximal information about a system.

**Expectation value** It is the (arithmetic) average we would get by repeatedly performing the same measurement of the observable  $\hat{A}$  on the same system in the state  $\Sigma$ , in the limit of  $N \to \infty$  measurements, denoted as  $\langle \hat{A} \rangle_{\Sigma}$ .

**Lebesgue-Stieltjes Measure** It is a function  $\mu : \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R}) \to \mathbb{R}$  such that  $\mu(\emptyset) = 0$ , and which is countably additive. We use the measure denoted by  $\mu = \mathrm{d}g$ , with g a real positive function, defined by:

$$\mu(]a,b[) = \lim_{\varepsilon \to 0} g(b-\varepsilon) - g(a+\varepsilon) \tag{1.1.3}$$

With this we define the Lebesgue integral as usual, getting

$$\int f \, \mathrm{d}g = \int f \frac{\mathrm{d}g}{\mathrm{d}\lambda} \, \mathrm{d}\lambda \tag{1.1.4}$$

where the derivative of *g* is to be interpreted in a distributional sense.

**Probability measure** If we have an observable  $\hat{A}$  and a state  $\Sigma$ , the function  $dP^A_{\Sigma}(\lambda)$  is the one given by applying the Riesz-Markov theorem to the linear functional  $g \to \langle g(A) \rangle_{\Sigma}$ , such that:

$$\langle A \rangle_{\Sigma} = \int g(\lambda) \, \mathrm{d}P_{\Sigma}^{A}(\lambda)$$
 (1.1.5)

With the help of equation (1.4.2) we then define

$$P_{\Sigma}^{A}(\lambda) = \langle \Theta(\lambda - A) \rangle_{\Sigma} \tag{1.1.6}$$

**Abstract probability measure**  $P^A(\lambda) = \Theta(\lambda - A)$ . It allows us to abstract from equation (1.1.6), having

$$f(A) = \int f(\lambda) \, \mathrm{d}P^A(\lambda) \tag{1.1.7}$$

**Fluctuations** of an observable  $\hat{A}$  around a value a:

$$(\Delta A)_{\Sigma,a}^2 = \langle (\lambda - a)^2 \rangle_{\Sigma} = \int (\lambda - a)^2 \, \mathrm{d}P_{\Sigma}^A(\lambda) \tag{1.1.8}$$

We usually take the fluctuations around the expected value, and define  $\Delta A_{\Sigma,\langle A \rangle_{\Sigma}} = \Delta A_{\Sigma}$ .

**Eigenstate** A state  $\psi$  such that the fluctuations around the expected value satisfy:

$$\inf_{\psi \in D(A)} \Delta A_{\psi} = 0 \tag{1.1.9}$$

.  $\langle A \rangle_{\Sigma} = a$  is the corresponding eigenvalue. We use  $\lambda$  to represent the eigenvalue,  $|\lambda\rangle$  to represent the eigenstate.

**Vector ray** A subset of the Hilbert space containing vectors in the form  $e^{i\alpha}\psi$ , for a fixed  $\psi \in \mathcal{H}$  and a varying  $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$ .

 $L^2$  it is the space of square-integrable complex-valued functions, modulo equality almost everywhere. It is a Hilbert space.

**Abstract Hilbert space** Since every Hilbert space is isometrically isomorphic to  $\ell_2$ , we say that  $|\psi\rangle$  is in an abstract space, and  $\psi(x) = \langle x|\psi\rangle$ ,  $\tilde{\psi}(p) = \langle p|\psi\rangle$  are *representations*.

**Linear functionals** They take a vector  $\psi$  in  $\mathcal{H}$  and return a complex number. The norm of a functional F is:

$$||F|| = \sup_{\|\psi\|=1} F(\psi) < \infty$$
 (1.1.10)

They belong to the dual of the Hilbert space,  $\mathcal{H}^*$ , as the application of F to  $\psi$  can always, by Riesz-Fischer, be written as  $\langle \phi | \psi \rangle$ , with  $\|\phi\|_{\mathcal{H}} = \|F\|_{\mathcal{H}^*}$ . Note: the functionals act on  $\mathcal{H}$ , not directly on  $\mathcal{H}/\mathbb{C}_0$ .

**Distance in**  $\mathcal{H}/\mathbb{C}_0$  It is defined by:

$$d(|\psi\rangle, |\phi\rangle) = \left(1 - \frac{\left|\langle\psi|\phi\rangle\right|^2}{\|\phi\|^2 \|\psi\|^2}\right)^{1/2} \tag{1.1.11}$$

**Adjoint of an operator** The adjoint  $A^{\dagger}$  of an operator A is defined by  $\langle \phi | A \psi \rangle = \langle A^{\dagger} \phi | \psi \rangle$ , with domain  $D(A^{\dagger})$  containing all  $\phi \in \mathcal{H}$  such that:

$$\sup_{\substack{\psi \in D(A) \\ \|\psi\| = 1}} \left| \left\langle \phi \middle| A\psi \right\rangle \right| < \infty \tag{1.1.12}$$

**Symmetric operators** An operator *A* is symmetric if  $D(A^{\dagger}) \supseteq D(A)$  and, in D(A),  $A = A^{\dagger}$ .

**Self-adjoint operators** A symmetric operator A is self-adjoint if  $D(A) = D(A^{\dagger})$ .

**Projectors** Operators P such that  $P^2 = P$  and  $P = P^{\dagger}$ . For every vector there is a projector  $|\psi\rangle\langle\psi|$ .

**Unitary operators** Operators U such that  $UU^{\dagger} = U^{\dagger}U = 1$ .

**Spectral Family** It is a one-parameter family of operators  $P(\lambda)$ ,  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$ , such that:

- 1.  $\forall \lambda$ :  $P(\lambda)$  is a projector;
- 2.  $\lim_{\lambda \to +\infty} P(\lambda) = \mathbb{1}$  and  $\lim_{\lambda \to -\infty} P(\lambda) = \mathcal{I}$
- 3.  $P(\lambda)P(\mu) = P(\min\{\lambda, \mu\});$
- 4.  $\lim_{\lambda \to \mu^+} P(\lambda) = P(\mu)$ .

**Probability density function** Given a concrete probability measure  $dP_{\psi}^{A}(\lambda)$  we define its pdf as:

$$W_{\psi}^{A}(\lambda) = \frac{\mathrm{d}P_{\psi}^{A}(\lambda)}{\mathrm{d}\lambda} \tag{1.1.13}$$

this derivative is generally to be understood in a distributional sense: the probability measure can be discotinuous.

**Gelfand Triple** Given an operator A, we want to represent the eigenvectors corresponding to its continuous spectrum, which do not belong to  $\mathcal{H}$ . So we take a subset of  $\mathcal{H}$ , such that:

- 1.  $\Phi_A \subseteq D(A)$ ;
- 2.  $\overline{\Phi_A} = \mathcal{H}$ ;
- 3. *A* is continuous (ie bounded) on  $\Phi_A$  wrt  $\Phi_A$ 's topology;
- 4.  $\Phi_A$  is nuclear: if we have two continuous linear operators in the cartesian product of  $\Phi_A$  with itself, then we can combine them into a continuous operator in the tensor product of  $\Phi_A$  with itself.

On generalized eigenvectors If a is in the continuous spectrum of A, we can still write an eigenvalue equation as  $AF_a = aF_a$ ; but  $F_a$  will belong to  $\Phi_A^*$ . Of course this is just formal, and it is understood to mean that  $AF_a(\phi) = F_a(A\phi)$  holds  $\forall \phi \in \Phi_A$ .

On generalized autobras In Dirac notation, we define a generalized autobra  $\langle \lambda | \in \Phi_A^*$  of A by  $\langle \lambda | \phi \rangle = \langle \phi | \lambda \rangle^*$ , which is well-defined because it is the scalar product of elements of  $\mathcal{H} \supseteq \Phi_A \ni |\lambda\rangle$ .

**Mixed State** Partial information about a system: represented by an operator  $\rho$  (the density matrix) which is: self-adjoint, non-negative, with tr  $\rho = 1$ . In a basis it can be written as a convex combination of projectors:

$$\rho = \sum_{i} c_{i} |\phi_{i}\rangle \langle \phi_{i}|; \qquad \sum_{i} c_{i} = 1$$
 (1.1.14)

where the  $|\phi_i\rangle$  are the possible states in which the sistem might be found, each with probability  $c_i$ . This definition comes from taking the expected value of a generic operator A given partial information on the system.

If we have a mixed state  $\rho$ , the expected value of an operator A is  $Tr(\rho A)$ .

**Representations** A linear representation of a group is a map from it to the set of linear operators on a vector space, which preserves the group structure. The representation is *unitary* if the vector space is Hilbert, it is *projective* if it maps group elements to operator rays, and if the group has a topological structure it can be defined to be continuous wrt that topology.

We can also have representations of Lie algebras, defined analogously, and the following diagram commutes:

$$egin{aligned} G & \stackrel{T_e}{\longrightarrow} \operatorname{Lie}G \ \mathcal{D} & & \downarrow \mathcal{D} \ \mathcal{L}(V) & \stackrel{T_e}{\longrightarrow} \mathcal{L}(V) \end{aligned}$$

Note that  $\mathcal{L}(V)$  is just a fancy way of saying "operators on the Hilbert space", in our case.

**Lie group** It is a differentiable  $C^{\omega}$  manifold with a group structure. We will treat *matrix* Lie groups.

We denote the coordinates on the group G as x, and the homeomorphisms of the atlas are denoted as  $U(x): \Omega \to G$ ,  $\Omega \subseteq \mathbb{R}$ .

**Lie Algebra** It is the tangent space to the identity of the Lie group G:  $T_eG$ . It is denoted as Lie G. From now on we speak of matrix Lie algebras.

It is endowed with a product,  $[\cdot, \cdot]$ , which corresponds to the commutator [A, B] = AB - BA, and so has its algebraic properties (bilinearity, antisymmetry, Jacobi, Leibniz). All the elements in a neighbourhood of  $\mathbb{1}$  in the Lie group can be written as

$$U(x) = \exp\left(\sum_{\alpha} x_{\alpha} e_{\alpha}\right) \tag{1.1.15}$$

Its structure constants are defined by  $[e_i, e_j] = f_{ij}^k e_k$ .

**Universal covering group** Given a Lie group G, its universal covering  $\tilde{G}$  is the (unique up to homeomorphisms) group which:

- 1. is homomorphic to *G*;
- 2. is simply connected;
- 3. has an isomorphic Lie algebra (Lie $G \simeq \text{Lie}\tilde{G}$ ).

**Experimental measurement** A measurement is said to be of the first kind if by measuring again an sufficiently short time later the probability to find the same result gets arbitrarily close to 1. Otherwise, it is said to be of the second kind. First kind measurements obey the Von Neumann projection postulate.

**Parity**  $\wp \psi(x) = \psi(-x)$ . Its basic properties are  $\wp^2 = \mathbb{1}$ ,  $(1 \pm \wp)/2$  are projectors onto the subspaces of even/odd functions, if  $\wp V = V$  then  $[\wp, H] = 0$ .

**Compatibility** Two observables  $A_{1,2}$  are said to be compatible if, when the system is in an eigenstate for  $A_i$ , taking a type 1 measurement of  $A_{i+1}$  does not change the eigenvalue for  $A_i$  (but it can change the specific eigenvector in the eigenspace).

**Families of observables** For a set of observables  $C \ni A_i$ , we say:

- the  $A_i$  are *independent* if  $\nexists f$  such that  $A_i = f(A_i)$ ,  $i \neq j$ ;
- *C* is *complete* if it is a set of independent observables, maximal wrt inclusion;
- C is *irreducible* if any observable which commutes with all the observables in C is (a multiple of) the identity.

**Tensor product** If we have two Hilbert spaces  $\mathcal{H}_{1,2}$ , then their tensor product  $\mathcal{H}_1 \otimes \mathcal{H}_2$  is the set of bilinear maps (improperly denoted as)  $\phi \in (\mathcal{H}_1 \times \mathcal{H}_2)^{**}$ , completed wrt the induced norm:

$$\left(\left\langle \phi_{1}\right| \otimes \left\langle \phi_{2}\right|\right) \left(\left|\psi_{1}\right\rangle \otimes \left|\psi_{2}\right\rangle\right) = \left\langle \phi_{1}\right|\psi_{1}\right\rangle \left\langle \phi_{2}\right|\psi_{2}\right\rangle \tag{1.1.16}$$

Also, we must take a quotient wrt having the same results when applied to couples of vectors.

So: not all tensors in  $\mathcal{H}_1 \otimes \mathcal{H}_2$  are in the form  $\phi_1 \otimes \phi_2$ , but they all can be obtained by adding (finitely or infinitely many) tensors expressed in this manner.

$$\forall \phi \in \mathcal{H}_1 \otimes \mathcal{H}_2 : \phi = \sum_{m,n=0}^{\infty} c_{mn} (\phi_m^1 \otimes \phi_n^2)$$
 (1.1.17)

with  $\phi_n^i$  belonging to  $\mathcal{H}_i \ \forall n$ .

**Product of operators** It acts on the product of spaces, component by component, and we extend this definition by linearity and completeness. Again, not every operator on the tensor product can be written as the product of two operators in the spaces.

**Symmetries** A symmetry is a function from the algebra of observables into itself which preserves every expected value. Wavefunctions correspond to operators (dyads), which means a symmetry must preserve every transition probability, so Wigner's theorem applies. Symmetries which are continuous (ie have a group structure isomorphic to  $\mathbb{R}$ ) cannot be represented by antiunitary operators.

Symmetries which preserve the Hamiltonian are said to be *dynamical*: they can be shown to be the ones which commute with the Hamiltonian.

**Angular momentum** A general angular momentum in  $\mathbb{R}^3$  is a set of three functions with the algebra  $[J_i, J_j] = i\hbar \varepsilon_{ijk} J_k$ .

A particular case of this is the *orbital* angular momentum,  $L_i = \varepsilon_{ijk}x_ip_k$ .

#### Philosophical principles

- *Reality*: the world exists, and looks like our mathematical representation of it, whether or not we are measuring it;
- *Locality*: the evolution of a subsystem cannot be influenced by another subsystem if the spacetime interval separating them is spacelike;
- Completeness: the wavefunction contains all the information about a quantum system.

### 1.2 Axioms

**States** Pure states are represented by a ket  $|\psi\rangle$  belonging to an abstract separable complex Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}$ , modulo multiplication by a complex number. On  $\mathcal{H}$  we have a scalar product  $\langle\cdot|\cdot\rangle$ , which is Hermitian. We furthermore assume the Fourier transform exists on  $\mathcal{H}$ .

**Observables** They are self-adjoint linear operators on  $\mathcal{H}$ , denoted as  $\hat{A}$ . Their norm is  $||A|| = \sup_{\|\psi\|=1} ||A\psi||$ . Their domain is denoted as D(A).

The probability for a measure of A to be  $\leq \lambda$  in a state  $\psi$ , with  $\|\psi\| = 1$ , is given by

$$P_{\psi}^{A}(\lambda) = \left| \left\langle \psi \middle| P^{A}(\lambda) \middle| \psi \right\rangle \right|^{2} \tag{1.2.1}$$

**Expectation value** Denoted as  $\langle \hat{A} \rangle_{\psi}$ , it is calculated with:  $\langle \psi | \hat{A} | \psi \rangle$ . This is invariant wrt  $\psi \to \alpha \psi$ ,  $\alpha \in \mathbb{C}_0$ ; and assumes  $\|\psi\| = 1$ , otherwhise we should normalize dividing by its square norm.

**Time evolution** The postulate is that the transition probabilities between states are constant in time, and that time translation operators form a group isomorphic to  $(\mathbb{R}, +)$ . These two hypotheses imply that the time translation operator must be unitary.

Also, as in classical mechanics, the Hamiltonian generates time translations. So the time evolution operator is

$$U(t) = \exp\left(\frac{t\hat{H}}{i\hbar}\right) \tag{1.2.2}$$

To evolve a state which is not an eigenstate of the Hamiltonian we have to expand it in H's eigenbasis, where the H in the exponential in (1.2.2) becomes the single eigenstate's energy. Then  $|\varepsilon\rangle$  evolves like

$$\exp\left(\frac{t\varepsilon}{i\hbar}\right)|\varepsilon\rangle\tag{1.2.3}$$

**Von Neumann projection** A first-kind measurement projects the state onto the eigenspace corresponding to the measured eigenvalue(s): if the result of the measurement is  $\in \Delta$ , the state of the system *instantaneously* changes to:

$$P_{\Delta}^{A} \left| \psi \right\rangle = \int \chi_{\Delta}(\lambda) \, \mathrm{d}P^{A}(\lambda) \left| \psi \right\rangle \tag{1.2.4}$$

where

$$\int_{\Delta} dP^{A}(\lambda) = \frac{\mathbb{1}_{\Delta}}{\langle \psi | P^{A}(\Delta) | \psi \rangle}$$
 (1.2.5)

(by  $\mathbb{1}_{\Delta}$  we mean the projector onto the span of the eigenvectors corresponding to the eigenvalues  $\lambda \in \Delta$ : concretely, the formula is the same as (1.3.4) but the integral and summation are to be performed only over the  $\lambda \in \Delta \cap \sigma(A)$ .

#### 1.3 Theorems

**Riesz-Markov** Let f be a positive linear functional defined from positive functions in the set  $C_0$  ( $C^0$  functions which go to 0 at  $\pm \infty$ ) to  $\mathbb{R}$ . Then there exist a monotonically increasing function g such that,  $\forall \psi \in C_0$ :

$$f(\psi) = \int \psi(x) \, \mathrm{d}g(x) \tag{1.3.1}$$

**Spectral families** Spectral families are in bijection with self-adjoint operators. Finding the spectral family of an operator just means diagonalizing it; the operator A corresponding to the spectral famility  $P(\lambda)$  is given by its average over any state:

$$\langle \psi | A | \psi \rangle = \int \lambda \, \mathrm{d} \, \langle \psi | P(\lambda) | \psi \rangle$$
 (1.3.2)

and the corresponding domain is

$$D(A) = \left\{ \psi \in \mathcal{H} : \int \lambda^2 \, \mathrm{d} \left\langle \psi \middle| P(\lambda) \middle| \psi \right\rangle < \infty \right\}$$
 (1.3.3)

**Completeness** Given a self-adjoint operator A, we can always write the corresponding completeness with projectors corresponding to its eigenvectors. We have to account for the degeneracy: we can have a  $d(\lambda)$ -dimensional eigenspace corresponding to a single eigenvalue.

$$1 = \sum_{\lambda_n \in \sigma_d(A)} \sum_{r=1}^{d(\lambda_n)} |\lambda_n, r\rangle \langle \lambda_n, r| + \int_{\lambda \in \sigma_c(A)} \sum_{r=1}^{d(\lambda_n)} |\lambda, r\rangle \langle \lambda, r|$$
(1.3.4)

**Wigner** A map  $\mathcal{H} \to \mathcal{H}$  which preserves the transition probabilities between states is represented by either a linear unitary operator ray  $\hat{U} = \left\{ e^{i\alpha}U, \alpha \in \mathbb{R} \right\}$  or an antilinear operator ray  $\hat{W} = \left\{ e^{i\alpha}W, \alpha \in \mathbb{R} \right\}$ .

For linear operators we have  $\langle U\phi|U\psi\rangle=\langle\phi|\psi\rangle$ ; for antilinear operators instead  $\langle W\phi|W\psi\rangle=\langle\phi|\psi\rangle^*$ .

**Bargman** There is a bijection between unitary continuous projective representations on G and unitary representations on its covering  $\tilde{G}$ .

**Stone** There is a bijection between one-parameter unitary transformation groups and self-adjoint operators: if we are given the transformation group U(t) then we define

$$A = \frac{1}{i\hbar} \left. \frac{\mathrm{d}U}{\mathrm{d}t} \right|_{t=0} \in T_{\mathbb{I}}(G) \tag{1.3.5}$$

where the derivative is to be taken in a matrix sense, component by component. The constant i is necessary, the constant  $\hbar$  is included for dimensional consistency. Then this A is self-adjoint in a dense domain D(A).

On the other hand, if we are given a self-adjoint operator A we can exponentiate it into a one-parameter group of transformations:

$$U(t) = \exp\left(\frac{At}{i\hbar}\right) \tag{1.3.6}$$

**Uncertainty principle** We take two observables A and B, with domains such that, if we take the sets  $D \subseteq D(A) \cap D(B)$  which are closed under application of both A and B, we can find a D which is dense in  $\mathcal{H}$ .

Then, recalling the definition of fluctuations in (1.1.8), we can state the theorem:

$$\Delta A_{\psi} \Delta B_{\psi} \ge \left| \frac{\langle \psi | [A, B] | \psi \rangle}{2i} \right| \tag{1.3.7}$$

This can be shown to also hold if instead of a pure state  $\psi$  we take our expectation values wrt a mixed state  $\rho$ .

The proof starts by considering the fact that the norm of

$$\left(rac{ar{A}}{\Delta A}\pm irac{ar{B}}{\Delta B}
ight)\ket{\psi}$$

(where  $\bar{A} = A - \langle \psi | A | \psi \rangle$  and analogously for *B*) must be real and positive.

**Compatibility** For any two observables A, B:  $[A, B] = 0 \iff$  they are compatible. (We proved it only in the case of bounded operators).

Also,  $[A, B] = 0 \iff$  their spectral families commute.

Also, if A = f(B) then [A, B] = 0 (and  $\sigma \circ f = f \circ \sigma$  when applied to B).

**Common eigenbasis** A set of independent observables, having only discrete spectrum, is complete iff it has a set of common nondegenerate eigenvectors spanning the entire space  $\mathcal{H}$ .

If we denote  $\vec{a}$  (with components  $a_i$  as the vector of the eigenvalues, that is,  $A_i | \vec{a} \rangle = a_i | \vec{a} \rangle$ , then we can write a completeness relation for the CSCO:

$$1 = \prod_{i=1}^{n} \left( \sum_{a_i \in \sigma_d} + \int_{a_i \in \sigma_c} da_i \right) |\vec{a}\rangle\langle \vec{a}|$$
(1.3.8)

**Kato-Rellich** Take a two-particle sysyem with a potential depending on their distance r, if:  $U(r) \sim r^{-\alpha}$  near r = 0 with a < 3/2;  $U(r) \sim 0$  near  $r = \infty$ , and  $U(r) \in L^2([0,1], r^2 dr)$ .

Then the domain of the Hamiltonian for each of the particles is the same as in the free particle case ( $\psi \in L^2$  for the position,  $p^2 \tilde{\psi} \in L^2$  for the momentum).

**Bloch** If we have  $H = p^2/(2m) + V(x)$  and V is periodic, such that  $\exists a : \forall x : V(x+a) = V(x)$ . Then the solution of the Schrödinger equation looks like

$$\psi(x) = U_k(x)e^{ik\cdot x} \tag{1.3.9}$$

With  $U_k$  being a periodic function (still with period a), and  $|k| \leq \pi/a$  being the Bloch vector.

**Perturbation theory** If our Hamiltonian looks like  $H = H_0 + V$ , where V is a small<sup>1</sup> perturbation, we can write it as  $H = H_0 + \lambda V$ . We can also add more perturbation orders.

Then: we call the unperturbed eigenvalues  $\varepsilon_n^0$ , the perturbed eigenvalues up to order  $k \varepsilon_n^k$ . We normalize the eigenkets by choosing  $\left\langle \varepsilon_n \middle| \varepsilon_n^0 \right\rangle = 1$ , which means  $\left\langle \varepsilon_n^k \middle| \varepsilon_n^0 \right\rangle = 0$  for  $k \geq 1$ .

We find the following closed formula for the eigenvalues:  $\varepsilon_n^k = \left\langle \varepsilon_n^0 \middle| V \middle| \varepsilon_n^{k-1} \right\rangle$ . For their eigenvectors, we find the components wrt the unperturbed eigenbasis by using an unperturbed completeness:  $\left| \varepsilon_n^k \right\rangle = \sum_{n \neq m} \left| \varepsilon_m^0 \right\rangle \left\langle \varepsilon_m^0 \middle| \varepsilon_n^k \right\rangle$ , (the term with n = m would be zero!) These components are:

$$\left\langle \varepsilon_{m}^{0} \middle| \varepsilon_{n}^{k} \right\rangle = \frac{1}{\varepsilon_{n}^{0} - \varepsilon_{m}^{0}} \left( \left\langle \varepsilon_{m}^{0} \middle| V \middle| \varepsilon_{n}^{k-1} \right\rangle - \sum_{l=1}^{k} \varepsilon_{m}^{l} \left\langle \varepsilon_{m}^{0} \middle| \varepsilon_{n}^{k-l} \right\rangle \right) \tag{1.3.10}$$

If we have degeneracy, that is, for a single eigenenergy there are many eigenvectors indexed as  $|\varepsilon_{m,\alpha}\rangle$ , we might be dividing by zero! but we can diagonalize the potential in the eigenspaces, so that  $\left\langle \varepsilon_{m,\alpha}^{0} \middle| V \middle| \varepsilon_{m,\beta}^{0} \right\rangle = 0$  for  $\alpha \neq \beta$ . Then we can sum over the degeneracy as well, and we will not have any division by zero on a non-vanishing term.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>Note that we do not look at the absolute value of *V* but at the size of its effect.

### 1.4 Lemmas and observations

**Probability function** For any set  $\Delta \in \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{R})$ :

$$P_{\Sigma}^{A}(\Delta) = \langle \chi_{\Delta} \rangle_{\Sigma} \tag{1.4.1}$$

then:

$$P_{\Sigma}^{A}(]-\infty,\lambda]) = \langle \Theta(\lambda-A)\rangle_{\Sigma}$$
(1.4.2)

**Symmetric operators** Their expectation values  $\langle \psi | A | \psi \rangle$  are real  $\forall \psi \in D(A)$ .

For a symmetric operator A,  $\Delta A_{\psi} = 0 \implies A\psi = a\psi$ , with  $a = \langle A \rangle_{\psi}$ .

The eigenstates of a symmetric are orthogonal:  $\lambda_n \neq \lambda_m$  implies  $\langle \lambda_n | \lambda_m \rangle = 0$ .

Spectral theorem: we can find an orthonormal basis for  $\mathcal{H}$  made of eigenstates of A. In this basis,

$$\langle A \rangle_{\psi} = \sum_{n} \lambda_{n} \frac{\left| \langle \lambda_{n} | \psi \rangle \right|^{2}}{\left\| \psi \right\|^{2}}$$
 (1.4.3)

where  $\left|\langle \lambda_n | \psi \rangle \right|^2 / \|\psi\|^2$  is then the probability of getting the measurement  $\lambda_n$  from an observation of A. From  $\{|\lambda_n\rangle\}$  being a basis, then, we get  $\Delta A_{\psi} = 0 \iff A\psi = a\psi$ .

**Projector representation of operators** If *A* is self-adjoint, we can write it as

$$A = \sum_{n} \lambda_n |\lambda_n\rangle\langle\lambda_n| \tag{1.4.4}$$

which allows us to take functions of it, which then only act on the eigenvalues. So, we can calculate

$$\langle A \rangle_{\psi} = \int \lambda d \left\langle \psi \middle| P^{A}(\lambda) \psi \right\rangle = \int \lambda d P_{\psi}^{A}(\lambda)$$
 (1.4.5)

with

$$P^{A}(\lambda) = \sum_{n} \Theta(\lambda - \lambda_{n}) |\lambda_{n}\rangle\langle\lambda_{n}|$$
 (1.4.6)

**On self-adjointness** If A, B are self-adjoint: A + B also is, AB generally is not; but

$$\frac{[A,B]}{i\hbar} \tag{1.4.7}$$

is.

**Domain of** H If  $H = p^2/2m + V(x)$ , its domain is not dense in  $\mathcal{H}$  in general. However if either V is limited, or it has spherical symmetry in 3D, then the domain of H coincides with that of  $p^2$ :

$$D(p^2) = \left\{ \psi \in L^2 : p^2 \tilde{\psi}(p) \in L^2 \right\}$$
 (1.4.8)

**Invariance of spectrum** The spectrum of an observable A does not depend on the concrete Hilbert space:  $\sigma(A) = \sigma(U^{\dagger}AU)$ , U being the unitary operator which gives the isometry between Hilbert spaces.

**Norm of operators** In general we have that

$$||A|| = \sup_{\lambda_n \in \sigma(A)} |\lambda_n| \tag{1.4.9}$$

Note that this extremum may be infinite.

**On residual spectrum** Self-adjoint operators and unitary operators do not have residual spectrum.

**Probability measure in diagonal form** Its discrete-spectrum part and continuous-spectrum part are derived by differentiating the definition of an abstract probability measure:

$$dP^{A}(\lambda) \Big|_{\sigma_{p}(A)} = \sum_{\lambda_{n} \in \sigma_{p}(A)} \delta(\lambda - \lambda_{n}) \sum_{r=1}^{d(\lambda_{n})} |\lambda_{n}, r\rangle \langle \lambda_{n}, r| d\lambda$$
 (1.4.10)

$$dP^{A}(\lambda) \Big|_{\sigma_{c}(A)} = \sum_{r=1}^{d(\lambda)} |\lambda, r\rangle \langle \lambda, r| d\lambda$$
 (1.4.11)

Note that the integral of  $dP^A(\lambda)$  is 1.

**Heisenberg approach, and Poisson brackets** Instead of evolving the wavefuction  $\psi \to U(t)\psi$  we can evolve the operators  $A \to U^{\dagger}AU = A^{H}(t)$ . This is equivalent to the Schrödinger approach.

The Poisson brackets between averages of operators on a fixed state are equal to averages of Lie brackets between the operators (divided by a factor of  $i\hbar$ :

$$\left\{ \left\langle \psi | A | \psi \right\rangle, \left\langle \psi | B | \psi \right\rangle \right\} = \left\langle \psi \left| \frac{[A, B]}{i\hbar} \right| \psi \right\rangle \tag{1.4.12}$$

**Probability current** Given any solution  $\psi$  to the Schrödinger equation with  $H = p^2/2m + V(x)$ , we want to find the continuity equation for the probability density  $|\psi|^2$ . To do this, writing SE for the Schrödinger equation, we calculate  $\psi^* SE - \psi SE^*$ , which after the manipulation  $(b\partial^2 b^* - b^*\partial^2 b) = \partial(b\partial b^* - b^*\partial b)$  yields:

$$\partial_{tt} |\psi|^2 + \frac{\hbar}{2mi} \partial_x (\psi^* \partial_x \psi - \psi \partial_x \psi^*) = 0$$
 (1.4.13)

If we generalize this to 3 dimensions, then the current  $\mathbf{j}$  in  $\partial_t |\psi|^2 + \nabla \cdot \mathbf{j} = 0$  is

$$\mathbf{j} = \frac{\hbar}{2mi} (\psi^* \nabla \psi - \psi \nabla \psi^*) \tag{1.4.14}$$

**Tensor product basics** We can obtain a basis for the product space as  $|e_i\rangle \otimes |e_j\rangle$ ,  $i, j \in \mathbb{N}$ . It is known that for  $\mathcal{H}_d = L^2(\mathbb{R}^d, d^dx)$ :

$$\mathcal{H}_d \otimes \mathbb{C}^N \simeq \bigoplus_{i=1}^N \mathcal{H}_d \qquad \mathcal{H}_n \otimes \mathcal{H}_m \simeq \mathcal{H}_{m+n}$$
 (1.4.15)

We also have  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^3, d^3x) = L^2(\mathbb{R} \ni r, r^2 dr) \otimes L^2(S^2 \ni (\theta, \phi), \sin \theta d\theta d\phi)$ 

**A matrix identity** For operators *A* and *B*, the following holds:

$$e^{-A}Be^{A} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n!} L_{A}^{n}(B)$$
 (1.4.16)

where  $L_A(B) = [B, A]$  is the operator which takes the commutator with A.

**Representation of translations** Translations,  $\langle x| \rightarrow \langle x-a|$ , are represented with

$$U(a) = \exp(a \cdot \nabla) = \exp\left(-\frac{a \cdot p}{i\hbar}\right) \tag{1.4.17}$$

since  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is simply connected: a projective unitary representation is the same as a regular unitary representation, and we find this formula by differentiating the translated autobra, applied to a generic test ket.

Representation of rotations It can be shown that

$$\exp\left(\frac{\varphi L_3}{i\hbar}\right) x \exp\left(-\frac{\varphi L_3}{i\hbar}\right) = R(\hat{u}_3, \varphi) x \tag{1.4.18}$$

where  $R(\hat{u}_3, \varphi)x$  is a rotation of angle  $\varphi$  around the z axis (by using formula (1.4.16)).

A generic rotation  $\exp(-\varphi(L \cdot n)/i\hbar)$  must equal the identity if  $\varphi \in 2\pi\mathbb{N}$ : but then  $\sigma(L \cdot n) \subseteq \hbar\mathbb{Z}$ .

The universal covering of SO(3) is unitarily represented in  $\mathcal{H}$ . SO(3) is isomorphic to  $S^3$  with all of its antipodes identified, or equivalently to unit quaternions or matrices in SU(2) (still, with antipodes identified).

A unitary representation of SU(2) is then a projective unitary representation of SO(3). The algebra of its generators is the same as that of the generators of regular rotations (by the definition of universal covering),

**Properties of angular momentum** Angular momentum always obeys  $[J^2, J_i] = 0$ . For a generic angular momentum we define:  $J_{\pm} = J_1 \pm iJ_2$ . Then  $[J_3, J_{\pm}] = \hbar J_{\pm}$ .

$$J^2 = J_{\pm}J_{\mp} \pm \hbar J_3 + J_3^2 \tag{1.4.19}$$

We can prove that, for a simultaneous eigenvalue of  $J^2$ ,  $J_3$ :  $|\lambda m\rangle$  (where  $J^2 |\lambda m\rangle = \hbar^2 \lambda |\lambda m\rangle$  and  $J_3 |\lambda m\rangle = \hbar m |\lambda m\rangle$ ):

- $\lambda = j(j+1), j \in \mathbb{N}/2;$
- $|m| \leq j$ ;
- *j* and *m* are either both half-integer of both integers;

•  $\sigma(J^2, J_3)$  is discrete.

$$J_{\pm} |\lambda m\rangle = \hbar \sqrt{j(j+1) - m(m\pm 1)} |\lambda, m\pm 1\rangle$$
 (1.4.20)

**Orbital momentum** Orbital momentum obeys  $[L_i, x_j] = i\hbar \varepsilon_{ijk} x_k$ , and an identical formula for p instead of x.

In spherical coordinates on  $S^2$ , we have  $L_3 = -i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial \varphi}$ . We can express  $L_\pm$  and  $L^2$ ; then by applying  $L_-$  repeatedly to  $|ll\rangle$  (which satisfies  $(L_+|ll\rangle=0)$  we can find the eigenfunctions. These are the spherical harmonics  $Y_l^m(\theta,\varphi)$ . For even/odd values of l they are even/odd. They form an orthonormal basis of  $L^2(S^2, d\Omega)$ .

If we fix the total angular momentum in a specific direction we cannot precisely measure the directional momentum  $n \cdot L$  in two different directions since they do not commute. We find

$$\Delta(L \cdot n)_{\psi} \Delta(L \cdot m)_{\psi} \ge \frac{\hbar}{2} \left| \langle \psi | (n \wedge m) \cdot L | \psi \rangle \right| \tag{1.4.21}$$

**Spin** A unitary representation of SU(2) must be the one to generate spatial rotations. But the exponential of the orbital angular momentum is a representation of SO(3): so there must be some other rotation. It cannot be something we simply add onto L as in L + S, still acting on  $\mathbb{R}^3$ , since then it would also not commute with position and momentum, but since those are irreducible it would necessarily be zero.

S must act on another space: so it must be that  $\mathcal{H} = L^2(\mathbb{R}^3, d^3x) \otimes \mathcal{H}_s$ .

S will also be a rotation operator in  $\mathcal{H}_s$ , and since  $\{x,p,S\}$  are an irreducible set of operators, and  $S^2$  commutes with all of them, it must be constant. So a quantum particle is defined by its total spin  $s \in \mathbb{N}/2$ .  $S_3$  can take all the values with integer difference from s, with absolute value less than or equal to it. Then we must have  $\dim \mathcal{H}_s = 2s + 1$ .

Using identity (1.4.15) we see that our system will be described by 2s + 1 wavefunctions.

**Spin 1/2**  $\mathcal{H}_{1/2}$  is  $\mathbb{C}^2$ , so our operators are complex 2x2 matrices. The eigenvalues must be  $\pm \hbar/2$ , so we normalize by the absolute value of this and get  $S = \frac{\hbar}{2}\sigma$ , where  $\sigma$  is a 3-vector of 2x2 matrices. We can go to a basis in which one is diagonal: we take  $\sigma_3$ , then it will necessarily be  $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$ .

We now want to find  $\sigma_i$  for i = 1, 2. Since  $\sigma_3^2 = \mathbb{1}$ , it must be the same for the others. Also, they must be self-adjoint.<sup>1</sup>

We find the other two matrices,  $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$  and  $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix}$ . We generally work in this basis,  $|\uparrow\rangle_3$  and  $|\downarrow\rangle_3$ . The eigenvalues of  $\sigma \cdot n$  for a generic unit vector  $n \in S^2$  with the usual coordinates are:

$$\frac{\left(|\uparrow\rangle_{n}\right)}{\left(|\downarrow\rangle_{n}\right)} = \begin{pmatrix}
\cos(\theta/2)e^{-i\varphi/2} & \sin(\theta/2)e^{i\varphi/2} \\
-\sin(\theta/2)e^{-i\varphi/2} & \cos(\theta/2)e^{i\varphi/2}
\end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} |\uparrow\rangle_{3} \\
|\downarrow\rangle_{3}$$
(1.4.22)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>We start by manipulating  $0 = \sigma_z^2 \sigma_y - \sigma_y \sigma_z^2$ , then define the anticommutator...

**Composition of angular momenta** We have two angular momenta  $j_1$ ,  $j_2$ . Their square and value along z can be simultaneously diagonalized; but we can also diagonalize their sum  $J^2$  and  $J_z$ , along with  $j_1^2$  and  $j_2^2$ .

We always keep the same eigenvalue for  $j_1^2$  and  $j_2^2$ , and switch between the bases  $|m_1\rangle |m_2\rangle$  and  $|JM\rangle$ . The combinations of  $m_1, m_2$  corresponding to a single M is said to be a descending multiplet (in which J varies). We have the following isomorphism of Hilbert spaces:

$$\mathcal{H}_{j_1} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{j_2} = \bigoplus_{J=|j_1-j_2|}^{j_1+j_2} \mathcal{H}_J$$
 (1.4.23)

where  $\mathcal{H}_{j_i}$  are the spaces in which  $j_i$  has a fixed value, so they have an eigenbasis written as  $|m_j\rangle$  (and analogously in  $\mathcal{H}_J$  a basis is  $|M\rangle$ ).

The spaces in (1.4.23) are those within which we work when treating a single particle (whose spin and orbital momentum do not change), but if we want to consider the general Hilbert space and write its completeness relation, we just take the direct sum of (1.4.23) for all possible values of  $j_1$ ,  $j_2$ .

**Clebsch-Gordan** The coefficients which allow us to switch between the two bases are the *Clebsch-Gordan coefficients*: they are  $(\langle j_1, m_1 | \otimes \langle j_2, m_2 |) | J, M \rangle$  (and we will denote  $\langle j_1, m_1 | \otimes \langle j_2, m_2 |$  as  $\langle j_1, m_1, j_2, m_2 |$ ). In general they could be complex numbers, and to perform the inverse switch of basis we would have to take the conjugate: this is unwieldy, so (since we work in Hilbert spaces modulo a complex phase) we can take them to be real and positive.

They can be found in tables, but the way to calculate them if lost on an island filled with angry fermions is to start from  $\langle j_1, m_1 = j_1, j_2, m_2 = j_2 | J, M = J \rangle$  (both momentums are aligned), we can then repeatedly apply the operator  $J_- = j_-^1 \otimes \mathbb{1} + \mathbb{1} \otimes j_-^2$  and calculate the eigenvalues with formula (1.4.20).

## 1.5 Specific problems

**Wavepackets and constant potentials** If our Hamiltonian is of the form  $H = p^2/2m + V_0$  (we work in  $\mathbb{R}$  for simplicity, but the generalizations to n dimensions are straightforward), its general eigenfunction  $\phi_{\varepsilon}$  such that  $H\phi_{\varepsilon} = \varepsilon\phi_{\varepsilon}$  is of the form

$$\phi_{\varepsilon}(x) = c_1 e^{ikx} + c_2 e^{-ikx} \tag{1.5.1}$$

with  $k = \sqrt{2m(\varepsilon - V_0)}/\hbar$ . Since k and  $\varepsilon$  are dependent on each other, we can write  $\phi_k$  as well as  $\phi_{\varepsilon}$ .

We can construct a packet of these eigenfunctions so that our wavefunction will be in  $L^2(\mathbb{R})$ :

$$\psi(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_0^\infty f_{k_0}(k)\phi_k(x)$$
 (1.5.2)

where  $f_{k_0}(k)$  is a positive function with integral 1 and with a maximum in  $k_0$ .

If the potential  $V_0$  is only locally constant, we can do this for every interval, and then connect the solutions by assuming continuity of the wavefunction and its first derivative.

**General 1D potentials, qualitatively** We take the usual Hamiltonian  $H = p^2/2m + V(x)$ , with V(x) having finite limits at  $\pm \infty$ .

WLOG, we take the zero of the energy to be  $\lim_{x\to +\infty} V(x)$ , and also WLOG  $\lim_{x\to -\infty} V(x) = V_{\infty} > 0$ .

Then we have three cases. We write  $\varepsilon$  for the energy of the wavefunction.  $\varepsilon$  must be greater than the minimum value of the potential.

- $\varepsilon$  < 0: we have discrete spectrum with degeneracy one;
- $0 < \varepsilon < V_{\infty}$ : we have continuous spectrum with degeneracy one;
- $0 < V_{\infty} < \varepsilon$ : we have continuous spectrum with degeneracy two.

**Harmonic oscillator** We start with a Hamiltonian  $H = p^2/2m + m\omega^2x^2/2 = \hbar\omega(P^2 + X^2)/2$ , with  $X = x\sqrt{m\omega/\hbar}$ ,  $P = p/\sqrt{m\omega\hbar}$ . Note that it is a sum of squares, so the total energy must be positive.

We define  $a=(X+iP)/\sqrt{2}$ . Then we can see that  $H=\hbar\omega(a^{\dagger}a+1/2)=\hbar\omega H'$ . So the spectrum of H' is just that of  $a^{\dagger}a\equiv N$  plus a constant 1/2.

We then find the algebra of these operators:  $[a, a^{\dagger}] = 1$ , [a, N] = a,  $[N, a^{\dagger}] = a$  (note the inversion of the order in the commutators!).

By using the relation Na = [N, a] + aN we can see that, if  $N\psi = \lambda \psi$ ,  $Na\psi = (\lambda - 1)\psi$ , and analogously  $Na^{\dagger}\psi = (\lambda + 1)\psi$ . This means that if  $\lambda$  is an eigenvalue of N,  $\lambda + m$ ,  $m \in \mathbb{Z}$  also is.

However,  $\lambda$  must be nonnegative, since  $\langle \psi | a^{\dagger} a | \psi \rangle \geq 0$ . Therefore,  $\forall \lambda : \exists m \in \mathbb{N} : a^m | \lambda \rangle = (\lambda - m) | \lambda \rangle = 0$ . So the  $\lambda$  are actually just the natural numbers: this means that we can find all the eigenfunctions like  $|n\rangle = (a^{\dagger})^n |0\rangle$ .

We just need to explicitly find  $|0\rangle$ , which satisfies  $a|0\rangle = 0$ . Since  $p = -i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial x}$ , we can see that  $P = -i\frac{\partial}{\partial X}$ . Therefore  $a = X + \frac{\partial}{\partial X}$ , and the solution to  $a\psi = 0$  is a gaussian:

$$\langle X|0\rangle \propto \exp\left(-\frac{X^2}{2}\right)$$
 (1.5.3)

**Two-particle systems and Keplero** We treat a two-particle system, in which they have a central potential U(r) between them. By Kato-Rellich we do not have concerns about the domain of the Hamiltonian. We switch to center of mass (R) and vector distance (x) coordinates. We factor  $\psi(R,x) = \varphi(R)\psi(x)$ . This wavefunction satisfies the stationary Schrödinger equation, with the reduced masses appropriately adjusted (sum of masses and harmonic sum of masses).

The center-of-mass part is just a single particle Hamiltonian, which we know how to treat. Since the Hamiltonian is rotationally invariant, our CSCO is  $\{H, L^2, L_3\}$ . We can split our Hilbert space into  $L^2(R^+, r^2 dr)$  and  $L^2(S^2, d\Omega)$ , in the first of which the CSCO is  $\{H, L^2\}$  (quantum numbers  $\varepsilon$ , l); in the second of which the CSCO is  $\{L^2, L_3\}$  (quantum numbers l, m).

By direct computation, the following holds:

$$P^{2} = X^{-2} \Big( L^{2} + (X \cdot P)^{2} - i\hbar(X \cdot P) \Big)$$
 (1.5.4)

We then write this in polar coordinates, and find that

$$P^{2} = \frac{L^{2}}{r^{2}} - \hbar^{2} \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial r^{2}} r \tag{1.5.5}$$

so our radial momentum is<sup>1</sup>

$$P_R = -i\hbar \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial}{\partial r} r \tag{1.5.6}$$

The momentum in (1.5.6) can be shown to be self-adjoint in  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^+, r^2 \, dr) \cap \{r\psi(\pm \infty) = 0\}$ . To simplify calculation we can go from the eigenfunctions  $h_{\varepsilon l}$  to  $\chi_{\varepsilon l} = rh_{\varepsilon l}$ , which belong to  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^+, dr)$ . This function obeys the equation:

$$-\hbar^2 \frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}r^2} \chi_{\varepsilon l} = \left(2m(\varepsilon - U(r)) - \frac{\hbar^2 l(l+1)}{r^2}\right) \chi_{\varepsilon l} \tag{1.5.7}$$

Which means that, just like the classical tractation of the problem, we can rewrite the equation to have an effective potential which includes the centrifugal barrier.

**Spherical waves** We treat the case of zero potential U(r), which corresponds to free waves. We define  $k = \sqrt{2m\varepsilon/\hbar^2}$ . By plugging in a polynomial ansatz and imposing  $\chi_{\varepsilon l}(0) = 0$  (which gives  $h_{\varepsilon l} \sim r^l$ , we find that  $h_{kl}(r)$  (we write it with index k since there is a bijection between the ks and the  $\varepsilon$ s) obeys

$$h_{kl}^{\prime\prime\prime} + \frac{2(l+1)h_{kl}^{\prime\prime}}{r} + \left(-\frac{2(l+1)}{r^2} + k^2\right)h_{kl}^{\prime} = 0$$
 (1.5.8)

And we can check that  $rh_{k(l+1)}$  obeys the same equation as  $h'_{kl}$ .

Also, for l=0 we find the equation  $\left(\frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}r^2}+k^2\right)\chi_{\varepsilon 0}$ , which with the boundary condition gives us  $\chi_{\varepsilon 0}\sim\sin(kr)$ , so  $h_{\varepsilon 0}\sim\sin(kr)/r$ . These two facts together allow us to find the general  $h_{\varepsilon l}$  (which we show with the right normalization):

$$h_{kl}(r) = \sqrt{\frac{2m}{k\pi}} k(-kr)^l \left(\frac{1}{kr} \frac{d}{d(kr)}\right)^l \frac{\sin(kr)}{kr}$$
(1.5.9)

These functions are not in  $L^2$ , so the spectrum of the Hamiltonian is continuous.

**Coulomb potential** We treat equation (1.5.7) with  $U(r) = -e^2/r$ , that is, a hydrogen atom. We define  $a = \hbar^2/(mc^2)$ , v = 1/(ka), x = 2kr. The equation becomes:

$$\frac{d^2 \chi_{\varepsilon l}}{dx^2} + \left( -\frac{1}{4} + \frac{\nu}{x} - \frac{l(l+1)}{x^2} \right) \chi_{\varepsilon l}(x) = 0$$
 (1.5.10)

We can construct an ansatz by requiring the solution to not diverge at 0 and  $\infty$ . This gives us  $\chi_{\varepsilon l}(x) = x^{l+1}e^{-x/2}v_l(x)$ , where  $v_l(x)$  is an unknown function. We can expand it into a power series,  $v_l(x) = \sum_p a_p x^p$ . Throwing this into the equation gives us a recurrence formula:

$$a_{p+1} = -a_p \frac{\nu - l - 1 - p}{(p+1)p + (p+1)(2l+2)} \sim a_p/p$$
 (1.5.11)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>Note that these are operators, so  $\partial r$  does not mean the derivative of r, but instead that when applied to a wavefunction  $\psi$  we need to calculate  $\partial(r\psi)$ .

This means that either the expansion for  $v_l(x)$  terminates (ie it is a polynomial) or it is an exponential,  $v_l(x) \sim e^x$ , but this would mean that the whole solution diverges exponentially  $\sim e^{x/2} \notin S^*$ . So it terminates: then we have a  $p_{max}$  for which the numerator in (1.5.11) is zero this means  $v \in \mathbb{N}$ , since all the other terms are!

By putting together the results we now have, we find the general form of the radial part of the solution of the Schrödinger equation for a Coulomb potential. It is written with Laguerre Polynomials:

$$L_j^k = \sum_{p=0}^j (-)^p \frac{(j-k)!}{(j-p)!(k+p)!j!} x^p$$
 (1.5.12)

$$\chi_{nl}(x) = x^{l+1} e^{-x/2} L_{n-l-1}^{2l+1} \left( \frac{(2l+1)!(n-l-1)!}{(n+l)!} \right)$$
 (1.5.13)

By differentiating the eigenfunction with the maximum angular momentum l = n - 1, we can find the r for which the probability of finding the particle is largest, which is  $r = n^2 a = n^2 \hbar^2 / (mc^2)$ 

**Landau levels** If we have a spinless quantum particle in a plane with a perpendicular magnetic field, the spectrum of the Hamiltonian is just like that of a harmonic oscillator, with  $\omega = eB/m$ .

**Scattering** We consider a particle impacting a target, and we impose the following conditions: the impact must be (relativistically) elastic; the distance between the scattering centers must be larger than their potentials' influence and the target is thin enough (so we can consider just one scattering center).

We want to calculate the differential scattering cross section  $\sigma(\theta, \varphi) = \frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega}$ , which is the ratio of the differential probability densities of being scattered in the solid angle  $d\Omega$  when coming from the differential area  $d\sigma$ . If we know the impacting and diffused probability currents  $j_i$  and  $j_d$ , the differential scattering cross section is:  $\sigma(\theta, \varphi) = r^2 |j_d \cdot r| / |j_i|$  (the formula is like this because we want this to be invariant wrt going further away from the scattering point: the current density will decrease like  $1/r^2$ , so we multiply by  $r^2$ ).

If we treat the scattering as if it was stationary, and consider an asymptotic wavefunction:

$$\psi(x) = \exp\left(\frac{t\varepsilon}{i\hbar}\right) \left(\exp\left(-\frac{p \cdot x}{i\hbar}\right) + \frac{f_p(\theta, \varphi)}{r} \exp\left(-\frac{pr}{i\hbar}\right)\right)$$
(1.5.14)

If we calculate the diffused and incident currents (with the help of the probability conservation formula), we find that the scattering cross section to be  $\sigma(\theta, \varphi) = \left| f_p(\theta, \varphi) \right|^2$ .

This also holds for the generic case.

**Nonstationary case** We wish to solve  $H|\psi\rangle=(H_0+V)|\psi\rangle=E|\psi\rangle$ , where  $H_0$  is the free particle Hamiltonian, ie  $-\hbar^2\nabla^2/(2m)$ . We know that the Schrödinger equation must be satisfied everywhere, even at infinity where V=0. So E is the energy corresponding just to  $H_0$  (since it must be conserved). Now, we define  $\Omega^{-1}=1/(E-H_0\pm i\varepsilon)$  as a formal operator which inverts  $E-H_0$ . Then, inserting a spatial completeness, and denoting  $\psi_{HOM}$  as the solution of the homogeneous equation  $((E-H_0)\psi_{HOM}=0)$ , we have:

$$\langle x | \psi \rangle = \langle x | \psi_{HOM} \rangle + \int d^3 y \, \langle x | \, \Omega^{-1} | y \rangle \langle y | \, V | \psi \rangle \tag{1.5.15}$$

Note that  $\langle y | V | \psi \rangle$  just means  $V(y)\psi(y)$ .

We can find the matrix elements  $\langle x | \Omega^{-1} | y \rangle$  by inserting a momentum completeness (we denote the variable momentum as q, and the momentum eigenvalue corresponding to E as p):

$$\langle x | \Omega^{-1} | y \rangle = \int d^3q \, \langle x | \Omega^{-1} | q \rangle \langle q | | y \rangle = \int d^3q \, \frac{1}{(p^2 - q^2)/2m \pm i\varepsilon} \frac{e^{q \cdot (x - y)/(i\hbar)}}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \qquad (1.5.16)$$

Now, we create a wavepacket with a small momentum uncertainty, such that the position uncertainty is much larger than the wavelength. Also, the position uncertainty must be larger than the width of the scattering cross section total ( $\int \sigma \, d\Omega$ ). Also, we do not consider any interference between incoming and diffused wavefunction.

So, we know how to solve the eigenvalue problem to find the incoming  $\psi_{in}$  — note that we have fixed E, the eigenvalue for the free Hamiltonian. Now, we can construct a wavepacket with some momentums around  $p_0$ , distributed according to  $g_{p_0}(p)$  (which, without being too specific, should look like a symmetric and rather sharp peak around  $p_0$ ). We also evolve each eigenfunction in this wavepacket.

$$\psi(x,t) = \int g_{p_0}(p)e^{\frac{\varepsilon t}{i\hbar}}\psi_{IN}(x)d^3p \qquad (1.5.17)$$

This looks like a small packet happily travelling along with speed  $p_0/m$ . We need to do a lot of calculations and approximations to solve this integral; and after doing so we find that the differential scattering cross section depends on a function of the incoming wave:

$$f_P(\theta, \varphi) = -\frac{2m}{k} \int \frac{\mathrm{d}^3 y}{4\pi} V(y) \psi_{IN}(y) e^{-ipr \cdot y}$$
(1.5.18)

To actually calculate  $\sigma$ , we integrate the probability density of the outgoing wavefunction, multiplied by  $r^2$ , along an outgoing ray, and divide it by the integral of the probability density of the incoming function over a line parallel to the propagation direction. We then get  $\sigma = |f_P|^2$ .

**Particle swaps** We treat a many-particle system: it is described in  $\mathcal{H}^{\otimes N}$ . In this space we want to find a unitary representation of the operation of switching particles. The group of particle permutation  $S_N \ni \sigma$  is generated by adjacent particle swaps  $\sigma_i$ , and it obeys the properties:  $[\sigma_i \sigma_j] = 0$  when |i - j| > 2;  $\sigma_i \sigma_{i+1} \sigma_i = \sigma_{i+1} \sigma_i \sigma_{i+1}$ .

The representation of this group can be said tom just remap the basis vectors  $e_{ij}$  to  $e_{i\sigma j}$ . In general, by the unitarity of the representation of a swap  $U(\sigma)$ , it needs to hold that  $U(\sigma) |\psi\rangle = c |\psi\rangle$  for some  $c \in \mathbb{C}$ .

**Superselection sectors** *If* it holds that  $\sigma_i^2 = 1$ , then  $c = \pm 1$ . c must be the same for all particles in a set of identical particles we are allowed to swap (otherwise we would have a contradiction by the rule  $\sigma_i \sigma_{i+1} \sigma_i = \sigma_{i+1} \sigma_i \sigma_{i+1}$ ). Then, we can distinguish *fermions* for which c = -1 and *bosons* for which c = +1. This immediately gives us the Pauli exclusion principle.

**Fractionary quantum Hall effect** If it is not the case that  $\sigma_i^2=\mathbb{1}$ , then the orientation of the swaps matters, we need to keep track of it  $(\sigma_i^+\neq\sigma_i^-)$ . we must still have  $U(\sigma)|\psi\rangle=c|\psi\rangle$ , but now  $c=e^{i\theta}$  for *any* theta. These are braid statistics The particles obeying these statistics are called anyons.

We can see this in an experiment. We create an almost two dimensional system, by having two charged semiconductor plates near each other with a magnetic field. We see Landau levels ( $\sim$  harmonic oscillator energy levels), but because of impurities we also observe slight imperfections in the energy distribution. This is the whole Hall effect.

Now, at very low temperatures, our particles ( $e^-$ ) are almost all the the lowest energy level ( $n\hbar c/(eB)=1/3$ ) and they obey braid statistics with  $\theta=2\pi/3$ : their wavefunction is

$$\psi(z_1, \dots, z_n) = \prod_{i < j} (z_i - z_j)^{1/3} \prod_{i=1}^N e^{-i|B|^2}$$
(1.5.19)

**Aharonov-Bohm** We try to define a self-adjoint momentum operator on  $\mathbb{R}/\sim$ , where  $x\sim x+2\pi$ . The condition to satisfy is  $\phi^*(x)\psi(x)\big|_0^{2\pi}=0$ .

We find that  $\phi(2\pi) = e^{i\gamma}\phi(0)$  is sufficient (although the naîve  $\gamma = 0$  also works). We call this momentum  $P_{\gamma}$ . Its eigenfunctions look like  $\exp\left(\frac{i\gamma}{2\pi}\right)\psi_n = A\psi_n$ , where  $\psi_n$  is an eigenfunction of  $P_0$ .

Then,  $P_{\gamma} = A^{\dagger}P_0A$ , therefore we can calculate:  $P_0 + \frac{\gamma\hbar}{2\pi} = P_{\gamma}$ .

This is physically realized by putting an infinite radially small solenoid through the ring on which the particle lives. We can then perform the canonical substitution  $p \to p - eA/c$  with  $-eA/c = \gamma \hbar/(2\pi)$ . This implies an observable shift in the spectrum of the momentum, which is observable experimentally.

**Berry phase** The result which expresses this generally is that when going around a loop *C* the wavefunction gains a phase given by:

$$e^{i\gamma} = \exp\left(\oint_C \langle \psi | d\psi \rangle\right) \tag{1.5.20}$$

**EPR** We can see experimentally that  $\neg (R \land L \land C)$ , and that also  $\neg (R \land L \land \neg C)$ .

We see this by having N spinless particles decaying into two fermions with spin 1/2. Their state is thus  $|\psi\rangle=(|\uparrow\rangle_A|\downarrow\rangle_B-|\downarrow\rangle_A|\uparrow\rangle_B)/\sqrt{2}$ .

Now, we measure one of them and then see that the other always has the opposite spin. After the measurement, we see around N/2 of them with  $|\uparrow\rangle_A |\downarrow\rangle_B$  and N/2 with  $|\downarrow\rangle_A |\uparrow\rangle_B$ .

So, were they in a mixed state before the measurement? No, since we can compute that the expected value for the spin in the x direction is 0 for the superposition, and 1/4 for the mixed state.

Then, in the time interval between the moment when the supports of the particles start having spacelike distance, and when the measurement is done (on A), we have a contradiction: is B in a mixed state, or in a superposition? If R + L + C were the case, both. Experiment says "superposition".

**Bell inequalities** We take a two-fermion system, with spins  $S_A$  and  $S_B$ , and define:

$$B(\{u_i\}_i) = S_A \cdot u_0 \otimes (S_B \cdot u_1 - S_B \cdot u_2) + S_A \cdot u_3 \otimes (S_B \cdot u_1 + S_B \cdot u_2)$$
 (1.5.21)

where  $u_i$  are 4 unit vectors, and we define the angles  $\theta_i$ , i = 1, 2, 3, 4 to be the ones between (u...) 01, 02, 13, 32 respectively. Then  $\theta_1 + \theta_3 + \theta_4 = \theta_2$ .

If we take a classical approach to calculating B, by making it have a probability distribution wrt a parameter  $\lambda$ , we see that it must be  $|B| \le 1/2$ .

If, instead, we compute  $\langle \psi | B | \psi \rangle$  by allowing for superpositions, we get a different result. Call  $|\pm\rangle_{A,B}$  the eigenvector corresponding to spin up/down along the z direction for particle A, B. Then, for both particles, we can calculate the following values for the spin a given unit vector  $u(\theta, \varphi) \in S^2$ :

$$\langle \pm | S \cdot u | \pm \rangle = \pm \frac{\cos \theta}{2} \qquad \langle \pm | S \cdot u | \mp \rangle = \frac{1}{2} \sin \theta e^{\pm i\varphi}$$
 (1.5.22)

Note that the second term is crucial for the interference! Using this, we calculate

$$\langle \psi | (S_A \cdot u)(S_B \cdot u') | \psi \rangle = -\frac{\cos(\theta - \theta')}{4}$$
 (1.5.23)

Now, we take  $\theta_1 = \theta_3 = \theta_4 \equiv \theta$ , so  $\theta_2 = 3\theta$ . So  $\langle \psi | B | \psi \rangle = -(3\cos\theta - \cos(3\theta)/4)$ , which has a maximum in  $\theta = \pi/4, 3\pi/4$ . There,  $\langle \psi | B | \psi \rangle = \pm 1/\sqrt{2}$ . This is incompatible with  $|B| \leq 1/2$ .

## Chapter 2

# **Nuclear physics**

### 2.1 Introduction

Things to remember about nuclear units:  $\hbar c \approx 197 \,\text{MeVfm}$  and MeVfm =  $10 \,\text{eV}\text{Å}$ ; there are weird things like  $e^2 = 1.44 \,\text{MeVfm}$ ,  $4\pi \varepsilon_0 = 1$ . The atomic mass unit is equal to 931.5 MeV.

We have indetermination both between position and momentum:  $\Delta x \Delta p \geq \hbar/2$  and between time and energy:  $\Delta E \Delta t \geq \hbar/2$ .

We can characterize the atomic particles by mass m, charge q, spin s, half-life and mean charge radius  $\langle \rho r^2 \rangle \sqrt{c}$ : this last quantity is of the order 0.87 fm for the proton, and -0.1 fm for the neutron.

## 2.2 Nuclear density

It it roughly constant up to some radius, then it decays. The proper way to write it would be to sum the modulus square of the wavefunction  $\psi_i$  of every nucleon:

$$\rho(r) = \sum_{i} |\psi_i(r)|^2 \tag{2.2.1}$$

We can approximate it as a radial distribution

$$\rho(r) \sim \frac{\rho_0}{1 + \exp\left(\frac{r - r_0}{a}\right)} \tag{2.2.2}$$

where  $\rho_0 \approx 0.15 \div 0.2$  nucleons/fm<sup>3</sup> is the approximately constant density in the central region,  $r_0 \approx 1.20 \div 1.25$  fm $A^{1/3}$  is the approximate radius of the nucleus (corresponding to where the density becomes half of  $\rho_0$ ),  $a \approx 0.65 \div 0.7$  fm is the *diffusivity*, which quantifies the length scale at which the density distribution goes to zero.

Taking  $r_0 \approx 1.2$  fm, we can estimate the nucleon density

$$\rho_0 \approx \frac{A}{V} = \frac{A}{\frac{4}{3}\pi (r_0 A^{1/3})^3} \approx 0.138 \,\text{fm}^{-3}$$
(2.2.3)

and the corresponding mass density will be  $\approx 129 \, \text{MeV/fm}^3$  corresponding to  $2.3 \times 10^{17} \, \text{kg/m}^3$ , which is huge when compared to, say, that of a block of Osmium, which is around  $2.26 \times 10^5 \, \text{kg/m}^3$ .

There are also asymmetric effects, such as a skin of neutrons in the outermost part of the nucleus or a halo, which extends much further than a skin. This can be seen by looking at the differences in the scattering cross section  $\sigma \approx \pi r_0^2$ .

We distinguish the nuclei by the proton number Z, the neutron number N and their sum A = N + Z. They are written as A[Z].

- Isotopes have the same Z, <sup>235</sup>U and <sup>233</sup>U;
- Isobares have the same A, <sup>44</sup>Ca and <sup>44</sup>Ti;
- Isotones have the same N,  $^{40}$ Ca and  $^{38}$ Ar;
- Isomeres have the same Z and N, but are in different excitation states. We require them to be somewhat stable, with half-life  $\gtrsim 10^{-12}$  s,  $^{99}$ Tc and  $^{99}m$ Tc.

We also define specular nuclei: denoting the nuclear numbers as (N, Z), (a, b) is isobaric and specular to (b, a).

At the driplines, the excess nucleons are not bound (the effective potential they are in does not have a minimum).

<sup>8</sup>B and <sup>8</sup>Be are isobares.

 $^{19}$ F is an isotone to  $^{17}$ F.

The stable isotopes of Samarium are those with A = 144, 150, 152, 154.

The specular nuclide to <sup>11</sup>Li would be <sup>11</sup>O, but it does not seem to exist.

The mass of a nuclide is given by

$$M(A,Z) = Zm_p + (A - Z)m_n - B(A,Z)$$
(2.2.4)

where *B* is the binding energy. It is a good first approximation to say  $B/A \approx \text{const}$ , around 8 MeV.

Actually, this value increases up to iron, then very slowly decreases, with slight bumps at magic numbers.

## 2.3 Waterdrop model

A nucleus is similar to a water droplet, like:

- $\nabla \cdot \vec{v} = 0$  and similarly the nucleons are roughly incompressible, mantaining a constant density inside the nucleus;
- The evaporation heat of a water drop is directly proportional to its mass, and similarly we can approximate  $B \propto A$ ;
- The water molecules are held together by intermolecular Van der Waals forces, with expressions like  $r^{-12} r^{-6}$ , and similarly the strong nuclear force has a short range.

We can write a Semi Empiric Mass Formula, which will give us the best estimate of the waterdrop model for the nuclear mass. We will assume that the nuclear forces *saturate* after a certain point, that is, they have finite support.

**Volume term** The full potential is

$$V = \sum_{i < j} V_{ij} (\left| r_i - r_j \right|) \tag{2.3.1}$$

so if the nuclear force was long-range we would have  $B \propto A(A-1) \langle V \rangle$ , since the terms in the sum (2.3.1) are A(A-1)/2 (by  $\langle V \rangle$  I mean the average binding energy in a nucleon pair).

We must account for the fact that the nucleons only interact with their neighbours in some fixed volume  $V_{\text{int}}$ : so

$$B \propto \frac{A(A-1)V_{\text{int}}}{\underbrace{V_{\text{total}}}_{\propto A}} \propto A - 1 \sim A$$
 (2.3.2)

So our first term will be

$$B \sim a_V A \tag{2.3.3}$$

**Surface term** The surface nucleons interact with less nucleons than the internal ones. This effect will surely be negative and proportional to the surface area, and we are only interested in proportionality, so

$$B \sim a_V A - a_S A^{2/3} \tag{2.3.4}$$

**Coulomb term** The positively charged nucleons repel each other: we model the nucleus as a uniformly charged sphere, which will have charge density  $\rho = 3Ze/\left(4\pi R^3\right)$ , where R is the radius of the nucleus. Applying  $\nabla \cdot E = \rho/\varepsilon_0$  and integrating over a sphere of radius r, we get

$$E(r) = \begin{cases} \frac{Zer}{4\pi\epsilon_0 R^3} = \frac{\rho r}{4\epsilon_0} & r \le R\\ \frac{Ze}{4\pi\epsilon_0 r^2} = \frac{\rho R^3}{3\epsilon r^2} & r \ge R \end{cases}$$
(2.3.5)

The energy density of the electric field is given by  $u = \varepsilon_0 E^2/2$ ; its integral over all of space  $U = 4\pi \int_0^\infty u r^2 \, dr$ , which corresponds to the Coulomb term to subtract to the binding energy, can be calculated analytically, and is the sum of the external and internal contributions:

$$U = \left(1 + \frac{1}{5}\right) \frac{(Ze)^2}{8\pi\varepsilon R} \tag{2.3.6}$$

Then we can put all the constants into a term, leaving out only the proportionalities to  $Z^2$  and  $R^{-1} \propto A^{-1/3}$ . Now our formula is:

$$B \sim a_V A - a_S A^{2/3} - a_C Z^2 A^{-1/3} \tag{2.3.7}$$

with

$$a_C = \frac{3}{5} \frac{e^2}{4\pi\epsilon_0} \frac{1}{r_0} \approx 0.7 \,\text{MeV}$$
 (2.3.8)

which can be found by recalling  $e^2=e^2/(4\pi\epsilon_0)\approx 1.44\,\mathrm{MeVfm}$  and  $r_0\approx 1.2\div 1.3\,\mathrm{fm}$ .

It might be more accurate for this term to be proportional to Z(Z-1), since the proper expression for the energy will be:

$$U = \frac{e^2}{4\pi\epsilon_0} \sum_{i=1}^{Z} \sum_{j < i} \frac{1}{\left| r_i - r_j \right|} \propto \frac{Z(Z-1)}{\left| \overline{r} \right|} \propto \frac{Z(Z-1)}{A^{1/3}}$$
 (2.3.9)

where  $\bar{r}$  is the average distance between the protons in the nucleus. We do not know what it looks like, but surely  $\bar{r} \propto r_{\rm nucleus} \propto A^{1/3}$ .

**Asymmetry term** The binding energy between pp is similar to that between nn, let us call it v, but it is smaller than the pn attraction by a factor  $\sim 2$ , so let us call the np energy 2v. This can be seen empirically from the fact that nn and pp are not bound states, while the deuton ( $^2$ H) is. The factor is around 2 because of the Pauli exclusion principle: nucleons are spin-1/2 fermions, so if their spins and isospins are the same they cannot come near one another: the spins will be aligned around half of the times that the isospins are aligned, so this justifies the factor of 2.

The asymmetry term becomes relevant for large *A*.

When counting the total binding energy we must divide by *A* to account for the fact that every nucleon only interacts with its neighbours.

$$B_A = \frac{Nv}{A}(N+2P) + \frac{Pv}{A}(2N+P)$$
 (2.3.10a)

$$= \frac{v}{A} \left( N^2 + P^2 + 4NP \right) \tag{2.3.10b}$$

$$= \frac{v}{2A} \left( 3N^2 + 3P^2 + 6NP - N^2 - P^2 + 2NP \right)$$
 (2.3.10c)

$$= \frac{v}{2A} \left( 3A^2 - (N - Z)^2 \right) \tag{2.3.10d}$$

The linear term in A is the volumetric term; the term to add is  $\propto (N-Z)^2/A$ . So now we have

$$B \sim a_V A - a_S A^{2/3} - a_C Z^2 A^{-1/3} - a_A \frac{(N-Z)^2}{A}$$
 (2.3.11)

This can be also seen by approximating the nucleus as a Fermi sea: if N = Z all the nucleons can be at the Fermi energy  $\varepsilon_F$ , while if there is a difference some of them will have more energy.

Take N-Z=4i, with  $i\in\mathbb{N}$ , and imagine moving to this configuration from i=0. The first two protons becoming neutrons will raise the energy of the nucleus by  $2\Delta E$ , where  $\Delta E$  is the separation between the energy levels. The next step will take  $6\Delta E$ , and in general the j+1-th will take  $2(2j+1)\Delta E$ : we need to add these up,

$$\sum_{j=1}^{i} 2(2j+1)\Delta E = 2i^{2}\Delta E = 2\frac{(N-Z)^{2}}{16}\Delta E$$
 (2.3.12)

It can also be shown (CHECK LATER) that  $\Delta E \propto 1/A$ . Then we get the same formula as before.

**Pairing term** It is added to the formula to explain the experimental data: the term we need to add looks like

$$B_P = \frac{a_P}{A^{1/2}}$$
  $a_P = \begin{cases} +\delta & \text{even-even} \\ 0 & \text{even-odd} \\ -\delta & \text{odd-odd} \end{cases}$  (2.3.13)

with  $\delta \sim 11 \div 12$  MeV. It is due to the wavefunctions of the nuclides "pairing up" in some sense. The exponent being 1/2 is not certain, some say 3/4 fits the data better...

**SEMF** The full formula looks like

$$B \sim a_V A - a_S A^{2/3} - a_C Z^2 A^{-1/3} - a_A \frac{(N-Z)^2}{A} \pm \frac{a_P}{A^{1/2}}$$
 (2.3.14)

with  $a_V \approx 16$  MeV,  $a_S \approx 17$  MeV,  $a_C \approx 0.7$  MeV,  $a_A \approx 23$  MeV,  $a_P \approx 12$  MeV. It fits the data well, for  $A > 10 \div 20$ .

The empirical data do not exactly follow the SEMF: the binding energy is slightly higher at certain *magic numbers*.

The highest binding energy per nucleon is found with  $^{62}$ Ni (B/A = 8.7945 MeV), while the lowest mass per nucleon is found with  $^{56}$ Fe. They can be different because they have different proton/neutron ratios.

**Mass parables** If we work at fixed A, the (2.3.14) looks like a parabola wrt Z. Actually, if A is even it looks like two parabolas, distanced  $2\delta$  apart, with the nuclides switching from one to the other as the parity of Z changes; if A is odd the nuclides are always even-odd so it is just one parabola. The asymmetry term is proportional to  $(A - 2Z)^2$ , so we get:

$$B = Z^{2} \left( -a_{C} A^{-1/3} - \frac{4a_{A}}{A} \right) + Z(4a_{A}) + \text{const}$$
 (2.3.15)

We perform a parabolic fit for the nuclei at A = 148, and compute the coefficients corresponding to the fit parameters according to formula (2.3.15). The results are shown in 2.1.

The fit parameters give  $a_A = 21.41 \,\text{MeV}$ ,  $a_C = 0.65 \,\text{MeV}$ ,  $a_P = 12.26 \,\text{MeV}$ . The energy at the vertex of the parabola can be calculated from the model assuming  $a_V = 16 \,\text{MeV}$  and  $a_S = 17 \,\text{MeV}$  to be 1340 MeV, while the real energy is 1225 MeV.

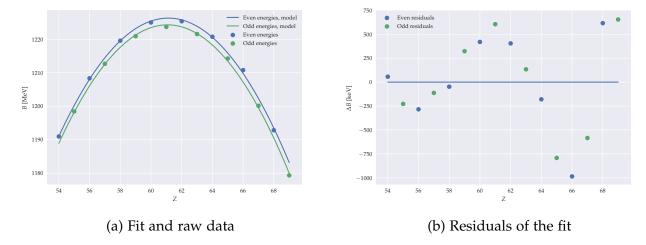


Figure 2.1: Mass parabola fit

There are some odd-odd stable nuclei, like <sup>14</sup>N, but they are rare.

**Specular nuclei** If they have  $\Delta Z = 1$  and A is odd, interesting things happen. Our working example is  ${}_{8}^{15}\text{O}_{7}$  and  ${}_{7}^{15}\text{N}_{8}$ .

The only term which changes in the SEMF between them is the Coulomb term: their Zs are  $(A \pm 1)/2$ , therefore (applying the corrected Coulomb formula given in (2.3.9)) their difference in energy is given by

$$\Delta B = \frac{a_C}{A^{1/3}} \left( \frac{(A+1)(A-1)}{4} - \frac{(A-1)(A-3)}{4} \right)$$
 (2.3.16a)

$$= \frac{a_C}{A^{1/3}} \left( \frac{4A - 4}{4} \right) \tag{2.3.16b}$$

$$= a_C \left( A^{2/3} - A^{-1/3} \right) \tag{2.3.16c}$$

We can plot the data for  $\Delta B$  wrt  $x \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} A^{2/3}$ . The plot will be of the form

$$\Delta B = a_{\rm C} x - \frac{a_{\rm C}}{\sqrt{x}} \tag{2.3.17}$$

The fit works, giving us  $a_C = (631 \pm 5) \text{ keV}$  in this parametrization.

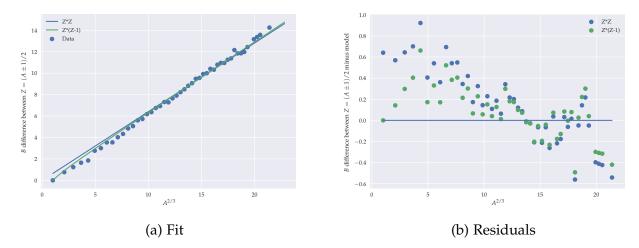


Figure 2.2: Fit of the difference in *B* between symmetric nuclei. The chi square is  $0.136 \,\text{MeV}^2$  for the  $Z^2$  model, and  $0.062 \,\text{MeV}^2$  for the Z(Z-1) model.

## 2.4 Fermi gas model

#### **Hypotheses**

- The nucleons are spin 1/2 fermions;
- the nucleons' collective actions can be represented with a spherically symmetric potential well U(r), extended in a radius  $R = r_0 A^{1/3}$ ;
- the nucleon gas is degenerate: the kinetic energy of the nucleons is much less than the thermal energy  $k_BT$ .

The proper Hamiltonian, without the mean-field approximation, would be

$$H = \sum_{i} T_i + \sum_{i < j} V_{ij} \left( \left| r_i - r_j \right| \right) \tag{2.4.1}$$

instead, we use

$$H_{\rm sp} = -\frac{\hbar^2 \nabla^2}{2\mu} + U(r) \tag{2.4.2}$$

where sp means 'single particle',  $\mu^{-1} = m_{\rm sp}^{-1} + m_{\rm nucleus}^{-1}$ .

For nuclei at human temperatures,  $\lesssim 10^3$  K, we have energies  $\lesssim \frac{3}{2}k_BT = 0.13$  eV  $\ll MeV$ , so thermal motion is negligible.

1*D* **infinite well** We have an infinite well from -a/2 to a/2, and inside it a particle of mass m.

The solutions to the time-independent Schrödinger equation are in the form

$$\psi(x) = A\sin(kx) + B\cos(kx) \tag{2.4.3}$$

where  $k^2 = 2mE/\hbar^2$  is the square of the wavenumber, which is directly proportional to the momentum  $k = p/\hbar = 2\pi/\lambda$ . We must also consider the boundary conditions: the domain of the Hamiltonian is  $\left\{\psi(x) \in L^2 \,|\, \psi(\pm a/2) = 0\right\}$ .

So we have two classes of solutions, proportional to either  $\cos((2q)\pi x/a)$  or  $\sin((2q+1)\pi x/a)$  with  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . If we call the even or odd number  $2q(+1) = n_x$ , the energy comes out to be

$$E = \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m} = \frac{h^2 n_x^2}{8ma^2} \tag{2.4.4}$$

3D **potential well** The problem works out analogously, with

$$E = \frac{h^2}{8ma^2} \sum_{i} n_i^2 \tag{2.4.5}$$

so we work in the space  $\mathbb{Z}_+^3 \ni \vec{n}$ , where same-energy states live in spherical shells.

The differential number of states in these shells is (approximately) given by the volume of the shell, which is an eighth of the sphere's:  $N = \frac{1}{8}4\pi n^2 \, dn$ . This can also be written as  $\rho(E) \, dE$ , that is, it corresponds to a density of states.

Then, since the energy is just a function of n, we have

$$dE = \frac{h^2}{8ma^2} d(n^2) = \frac{h^2}{4ma^2} n dn$$
 (2.4.6)

Therefore we can substitute in:

$$\rho(E) dE = \frac{\pi}{2} \underbrace{n}_{\sqrt{8ma^2 E/h^2}} \underbrace{n dn}_{4ma^2/h^2 dE} = \frac{2\pi \left(2ma^2\right)^{3/2}}{h^3} \sqrt{E} dE$$
 (2.4.7)

and we can also express this wrt  $p = \sqrt{2mE}$ ; its differential is p dp = m dE:

$$\rho(E) dE = \rho(p) dp = V \frac{4\pi a^3 p^2 dp}{h^3}$$
 (2.4.8)

Where  $a^3 = V$  is the volume, and since we treat a spherically symmetric problem we can rewrite it as  $V = \frac{4}{3}\pi r_0^3 A$ . Then, we put two fermions in each shell, thus getting N particles in total.

$$dN = 2\rho(p) dp = \frac{4}{3\pi} \frac{r_0^3 p^2}{\hbar^3} A dp$$
 (2.4.9)

**Fermi sea** This probability density must be normalized: let us consider the protons first. If their occupation is maximal up to  $p_F$  and null after, it must be

$$Z = \int_0^{p_F} 2\rho(p) \, \mathrm{d}p = \int_0^{p_F} \frac{4}{3\pi} \frac{r_0^3 p^2}{\hbar^3} A \, \mathrm{d}p = \frac{4A}{9\pi} \frac{r_0^3 p_F^3}{\hbar^3}$$
 (2.4.10)

Turning this around gives

$$p_F c = \frac{\hbar c}{r_0} \sqrt[3]{\frac{9\pi}{8} \frac{2Z}{A}} \tag{2.4.11}$$

and we can find a similar result for the neutrons. Note that, if the nucleus is close to being symmetric,  $p_F$  only depends on  $r_0 \propto \rho_0 = A/V$ , not on A or V re

For light nucluei we can assume  $2Z/A \approx 1$ , and we know that  $r_0 \approx 1.25$  fm. Then  $p_F \approx 240$  MeV/c and  $E_F \approx 31$  MeV/c<sup>2</sup>

If we assume that  $V = E_F + B/A$  (as in, if we were to remove one nucleon at a time we would on average find them at the energy -B/A) we find that the potential well is around 40 MeV deep.

One more prediction of this model is that, for heavy nuclei with N > Z,  $E_{F_N} > E_{F_p}$ ; the magnitude of the difference is around 32 vs 28 MeV for Uranium.

**Isospin** We consider nucleons as different manifestations of a single particle, with different eigenvalues for the z component of an operator  $\vec{T}$ , which has algebra  $\mathfrak{su}(2)$ . So, we assume that the nucleon is an isospin-1/2 particle (that is, the eigenvalue of  $T^2$  is  $3\hbar^2/4 = \hbar^2 i(i+1)$ ).

**Average kinetic energy** We have computed the state distribution differential dN, with  $\int dN = A$  in equation (2.4.9). It is useful to split the neutron and proton contributions since in heavy nuclei their numbers differ significantly. For both of them we can find:

$$\langle E_k \rangle = \frac{1}{A} \int_0^A p^2 / (2m) \, dN = \frac{1}{A} \int_0^{p_F} \frac{p^2}{2m} \frac{4}{3\pi} \frac{r_0^3 p^2}{\hbar^3} A \, dp = \frac{4}{3\pi} \frac{r_0^3}{\hbar^3} \int_0^{p_F} \frac{p^4}{2m} \, dp \qquad (2.4.12)$$

so adding their contributions we get

$$\langle E_k \rangle = \frac{4r_0^3}{3\pi\hbar^3} \left( \frac{p_{F_p}^5}{10m_p} + \frac{p_{F_n}^5}{10m_n} \right)$$
 (2.4.13)

and we can substitute in the formula for the Fermi momentum (2.4.11), and approximate  $m \approx m_n \approx m_p$ : we get

$$\langle E_k \rangle = \frac{4r_0^3}{30m\pi\hbar^3} \left( \left( \frac{\hbar}{r_0} \sqrt[3]{\frac{9\pi}{8}} \frac{2Z}{A} \right)^5 + \left( \frac{\hbar}{r_0} \sqrt[3]{\frac{9\pi}{8}} \frac{2(A-Z)}{A} \right)^5 \right)$$
(2.4.14a)

$$= \frac{3^{7/3}}{80} \frac{\pi^{2/3} \hbar^2}{80 A m r_0^2} \left( \left( \frac{2Z}{A} \right)^{5/3} + \left( \frac{2(A-Z)}{A} \right)^{5/3} \right)$$
 (2.4.14b)

Now, 2Z/A is approximately 1, so we can do a series expansion!  $2Z/A \approx 1 + x$ , where x = (2Z - A)/A.

We can use  $(1+x)^{5/3} + (1-x)^{5/3} = 2 + 10x^2/9 + O(x^3)$ . So,

$$\langle E_k \rangle = \frac{3^{7/3}}{80} \frac{\pi^{2/3} \hbar^2}{40 A m r_0^2} \left( 1 + \frac{5}{9} \left( \frac{2Z - A}{A} \right)^2 \right)$$
 (2.4.15)

## 2.5 Nuclear fission

**Ellipsoid deformations** The nucleus is approximately spherical, but we can model its oscillations as having an axis of rotational symmetry, thus having the shape of an ellipsoid. We call its two equal axes b and its different axis a. If a > b the ellipsoid is prolate, otherwise it is oblate.

Since the volume is conserved, if R = a = b is the spherical configuration, a small perturbation of it must look like  $a = R(1 + \varepsilon)$ ,  $b = R(1 + \varepsilon)^{-1/2}$ .

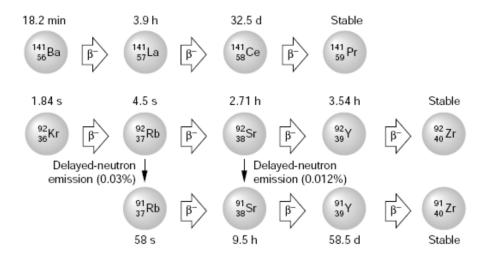


Figure 2.3: Barium decay chain

Calculations show that the surface increases like  $4\pi R^2 \to 4\pi R^2 \Big(1 + (2/5)\varepsilon^2 + O(\varepsilon^3)\Big)$ , therefore  $A^{2/3} \to \Big(1 + (2/5)\varepsilon^2\Big)A^{2/3}$ ; we will also need the fact that  $A^{-1/3} \to \Big(1 - (1/5)\varepsilon^2\Big)A^{-1/3}$ . The part of the SEMF that changes looks like

$$B = -a_S A^{2/3} - a_C \frac{Z^2}{A^{1/3}} + \text{const} \rightarrow -a_S A^{2/3} \left( 1 + \frac{2}{5} \varepsilon^2 \right) - a_C \frac{Z^2}{A^{1/3}} \left( 1 - \frac{1}{5} \varepsilon^2 \right) + \text{const} \quad (2.5.1)$$

so we can compute the difference  $B_{\text{new}} - B_{\text{old}} = \Delta B$ :

$$\Delta B = A^{2/3} \left( -a_S \frac{2}{5} \varepsilon^2 + a_C \frac{Z^2}{A} \frac{1}{5} \varepsilon^2 \right) = A^{2/3} \frac{\varepsilon^2}{5} \left( -2a_S + a_C \frac{Z^2}{A} \right)$$
 (2.5.2)

this changes sign, becoming positive, for  $a_S/a_C < Z^2/(2A)$ . The ratio of the constants is known and approximately equal to  $2a_S/a_C \approx 49$ . At that point, becoming more elliptical corresponds to gaining energy, so the nucleus is unstable and will fission.

The inequality is reached around  $Z \approx 114$ ,  $A \approx 270$ . This is not the limit seen experimentally: nuclei fission as early as  $Z^2/A \approx 35$ , but it gives a good theoretical justification of the fact that after a certain point we do not find any more stable nuclei.

**Nuclear fission**  $^{235,238}$ U fission spontaneously, around  $10^{-9}$  to  $10^{-5}$  of the times they alphadecay.

In fisssion from  $^{238}\text{U}$  to  $A\approx 119$  nuclei around 200 MeV of energy is emitted.

**Neutron capture causing change in** Z It works like this: the atom (say, <sup>238</sup>U) absorbs a neutron, becoming the excited <sup>239</sup>\*U; then, this nucleus emits gamma radiation becoming <sup>239</sup>U, finally it balances the neutron excess by decaying  $\beta^-$  and thus becoming <sup>239</sup>Np.

**Neutron capture causing fission** The capture of a neutron can make an atom unstable wrt deformation, and then it might tunnel through the potential barrier.

Since the N/Z ratio is higher in heavier nuclei, the fission products will not be stable with the amount of neutrons they end up with, so they will tend to emit neutrons.

Some atoms have low energy barriers for fission, which can be surpassed by ambient temperature neutrons with  $E = k_B T_{\rm amb} \approx 26 \, {\rm meV}$  (<sup>235</sup>U is like this), while others need fast-moving neutrons (like <sup>238</sup>U).

The probability of a nucleus of mass A being emitted in symmetric nuclear fission is bimodal, with high regions around  $A \approx 90$  and  $A \approx 130$ .

#### 2.6 Nuclear Fusion

Nuclear fission reactions can have very high energy yields, but also have high activation energies because of the Coulomb barrier.

$$Q = -\sum_{\text{reagents}} E_i + \sum_{\text{products}} E_i \tag{2.6.1}$$

Between the first nuclear fusion reactions one can write, the highest in Q is  $d + d \rightarrow^4 He + \gamma$  with  $Q \approx 24$  MeV, while other reactions with protons and deutons have  $Q = 3 \div 5$  MeV.

#### Coulomb barrier Its height is

$$V_C = \frac{e^2}{4\pi\varepsilon_0} \frac{Z_1 Z_2}{R} \tag{2.6.2}$$

where *R* is the sum of the radii of the nuclei, a distance at which we assume the nuclear forces take over. For example, in the d + d reaction,  $V_C \approx 500 \text{ keV}$ .

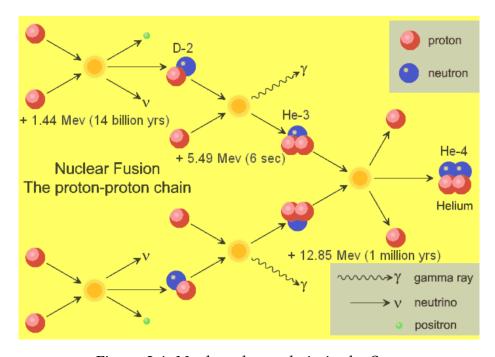


Figure 2.4: Nuclear decay chain in the Sun.

In figure 2.4 we show the nuclear fusion chain in the sun: from just protons we get <sup>4</sup>He, with a release of 26.73 MeV.

To get a high yield in nuclear fusion we need a kinetic energy on the order of 10 keV, which corresponds to very high temperatures.

#### 2.7 Deuton

It is the only two-nucleon bound state; it has a total energy of 2.224 MeV

Its rms radius is around 2 fm, its spin-parity is  $j^{\pi} = +1$ , its magnetic moment is  $\mu = 0.86 \mu_N$ .

It just has one degree of freedom, to study we only need the radial coordinate between the two nucleons: we assume our wavefunction to be in the form

$$\psi(r,\Omega) = \frac{u(r)}{r} Y_{ml}(\Omega)$$
 (2.7.1)

where  $\Omega$  is a pair of angles describing the relative position of the particles:  $\vec{r} = (\vec{r_1} - \vec{r_2})/2$  is described by  $(r, \Omega)$ .

The radial part of the Schrödinger equation is

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2\mu}\frac{d^2u}{dr^2} + \left(V(r) + \frac{\hbar^2l(l+1)}{2\mu r^2}\right)u(r) = Eu(r)$$
 (2.7.2)

with  $\mu = m_n m_p / (m_n + m_p) \approx m_p / 2$ . This comes from the fact that

$$P^{2} = \frac{L^{2}}{r^{2}} - \hbar^{2} \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial r^{2}} r \tag{2.7.3}$$

We model the potential as a well: then the (reduced) wavefunction u will look like  $\sin(r)$  up to the end of the well, and  $\exp(-r)$  after it, with wavevectors like  $k_{\rm in}=i\sqrt{2m(V_0+E)/\hbar^2}$  and  $k_{\rm out}=\sqrt{-2m(E)/\hbar^2}$  as argument of the exponential.

**Spin coupling** The neutron and proton have either 0 or 1 as total spin S, and they are both even under spatial parity. The angular wavefunction has momentum L, and parity equal to  $(-)^L$ . Then, since we know that for the full deuton  $j^{\pi} = +1$ 

$$(+)(+)(-)^{L} = (+)$$
  $1 = \vec{L} + \vec{S}$  (2.7.4)

The first equation implies  $L \in 2\mathbb{N}$ . By the other, if S = 0 then L = 1, which cannot be. So S = 1, but this means  $1 = \vec{1} + \vec{L}$ , so  $0 \le L \le 2$ , therefore L = 0, 2.

By the Hund rule, we expect the state with the lower angular momentum  $(^{3}S_{1})$  to be the ground state.

With our newly found ground state we can compute expectation values, like the one of

$$\vec{\mu} = \frac{e\hbar}{2m}\vec{L} + \sum g_S \mu_N \vec{S} = (g_L^p + g_L^n)\mu_N \vec{L} + (g_S^p \vec{S}_p + g_S^n \vec{S}_n)\mu_N$$
 (2.7.5)

We know the values of the *g* factors.

In the ground state we expect S=0, L=0, and our particles have s=1/2, therefore the expectation value will be  $\langle \psi | \vec{\mu} | \psi \rangle = \frac{1}{2} (g_S^p + g_S^p) \mu_N$ .

This is close to the true value but the measurement can be made very precisely, and the theoretical value does not hold up.

This is due to our hypothesis that the ground state is  $|L=0\rangle$  not being completely correct: the state is really a linear combination of mostly  $|L=0\rangle$  with a bit of  $|L=2\rangle$ .

This suggest the existence of a tensorial term in the binding force, which mixes different angular momentum eigenstates. This is confirmed by the measurement of the quadrupole moment  $Q \approx 3$  meb, which could not be nonzero if the ground state had only L=0.

#### 2.8 Shell model

Allows us to explain the magic numbers, and to model excited nuclear states.

We work assuming all but one of the nucleons just form the *core* with its mean field, and just work with the outermost nucleon in this mean field:  $\hat{H}_{\text{single particle}} = p^2/2m + U_{\text{mean}}(r)$ .

**Evidence** The plots of the separation energies for a neutron or a proton have dips at 1+ a magic number (of protons / of neutrons).

The residuals from the SEMF also have dips at magic numbers.

The magic numbers are 2, 8, 20, 28, 50, 82, 126. 40 is less magic.

**Parabolic potential** Our first idea is to Taylor expand the potential (wrt position): we have a constant term, the first derivative is zero, the second derivative gives us the harmonic term: so we have a Hamiltonian like  $\hat{H} = \frac{1}{2m}p^2 + \frac{1}{2}mx^2\omega^2$ .

Since it is a 3d oscillator, the energies look like  $E_N = (N + \frac{3}{2})\hbar\omega$ , with  $N = \sum_i n_i$ . This is in cartesian coordinates, in polars instead we can write  $N = 2(n_r - 1) + L$ , with  $L \le N$ .

It can be shown with a group theory argument that the angular momentum must have the same parity as N.

Then the total degeneracy is

$$D(N) = \sum_{\substack{L \le N \\ N+L \equiv 0 \mod 2}} 2(2L+1)$$
 (2.8.1)

since for every L we can have 2L + 1 values of  $L_z$  and for each of those two spin configurations.

This works up to around Z = 20, then we need to include some corrections.

**Woods-Saxon potential** It is a better approximation of the real potential than the parabolic one: it looks like the density function but with its sign flipped, so:

$$V_{\rm WS} = \frac{-V_0}{1 + \exp\left(\frac{r - r_0}{a}\right)} \tag{2.8.2}$$

with  $V_0 \approx 57$  MeV,  $r_0 \approx 1.25$  fm $A^{1/3}$ ,  $a \approx 0.65$  fm.

**Spin-orbital correction** It is a perturbation to the total Hamiltonian of the form  $L \cdot S = \frac{1}{2} \left( J^2 - L^2 - S^2 \right)$  which, somewhat *ad hoc*, we multiply by a radial function.

$$E_{\text{spin-orbital}} = k \frac{\text{d}V_{\text{WS}}}{\text{d}r} L \cdot S \tag{2.8.3}$$

**Other corrections** The proton potential well will be higher than the neutron one, and it will have Coulomb tails.

There will also be an *LL* coupling term.

**Excitations** The number of possible excited states grows with *A*, because they depend on the *j* coupling. They can be formed in various ways: photoexcitation, inelastic scattering, or the nucleus can decay into an excited state.

How to calculate the ground state Look at figure 2.5 and start filling the neutron and proton shells separately. Hopefully you get to a configuration close to a full shell, then  $j^{\pi}$  can be calculated by looking at the single additional or missing nucleon(s).

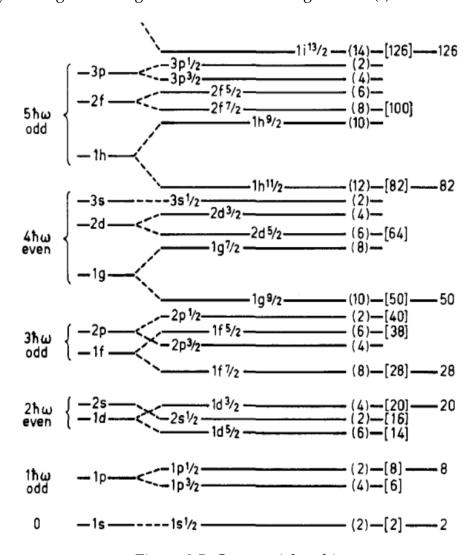


Figure 2.5: One-particle orbits

#### 2.9 Collective model

It is used to describe the vibrations of the nucleus. In full generality, the angular distribution of the radius will look like

$$R(\theta, \varphi) = R_0 \left( 1 + \sum_{l=0}^{\infty} \sum_{m=-l}^{l} \alpha_{lm} Y_{lm}(\theta, \varphi) \right)$$
(2.9.1)

where the  $Y_{lm}$  are the normalized spherical harmonics (functions  $Y: S^2 \to \mathbb{C}$  which satisfy  $\nabla^2 Y = 0$ ,  $L^2 Y_{lm} = \hbar^2 l(l+1)$ ,  $L_z Y_{lm} = \hbar m$ ).

The term  $\alpha_{00}$  is only relevant at very high energies (it is spherically symmetrical compression/expansion). The term  $\alpha_{1m}$  correspond to translation, not an intrinsic vibration. So, we look at the quadrupole term,  $\alpha_{2m}$ .

We can perform a rotation  $a_{2\mu} \to a_{2\mu}$  using the Wigner matrices<sup>1</sup> to go into a frame where  $a_{21} = a_{2(-1)} = 0$  and  $a_{22} = a_{2(-2)}$ . We parametrize the nonzero  $a_{21} = a_{20} = \beta \cos(\gamma)$ ,  $a_{2(\pm 2)} = \beta \sin(\gamma)/\sqrt{2}$ . We used up 3 of the 5 dimensions for this.

The parameter  $\beta = \sum |a_{2m}|^2$  describes the magnitude of the deformation, the parameter  $\gamma$  describes its direction: it can be shown that

$$R_k = R_0 \left( 1 + \frac{5}{4\pi} \beta \cos\left(\gamma + \frac{2}{3}\pi k\right) \right) \tag{2.9.3}$$

where k = 1, 2, 3.

We write the Hamiltonian of the oscillation with respect to the parameters  $\alpha_{2\mu}$ : the corresponding momenta are  $\partial/\partial\alpha_{2\mu}=\pi_{2\mu}$ . Modelling the low-energy vibrations as a harmonic oscillator we get

$$H = \frac{\pi_{2\mu}\pi_{2\mu}^{\dagger}}{2B} + \frac{C}{2}\alpha_{2\mu}\alpha_{2\mu}^{\dagger} \tag{2.9.4}$$

and we have expressions for B, C.

The solutions for the Hamiltonian (2.9.4) can be shown to have energy  $E = (\sum_{\mu} n_{\mu} + 5/2)\hbar\omega$ , with  $\omega = \sqrt{C/B}$ . This formula implies the presence of degeneracy, but this is partially removed when introducing perturbations.

We can express the energy quantum number wrt the parameters  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$ :  $\sum_{\mu} n_{\mu} = 2n_{\beta} + \tau$ , where  $\tau(\tau + 3)$  is the eigenvalue of the Casimir operator on SO(5).

# 2.10 $\alpha$ decay

 $\alpha$  particles are <sup>4</sup>He nuclei. That configuration has a particularly high binding energy per nucleon. The reaction in  $\alpha$  decay looks like

$${}_{Z}^{A}X \rightarrow {}_{Z-2}^{A-4}Y + \alpha \tag{2.10.1}$$

For it to happen, we must have M(A,Z) > M(A-4,Z) + M(4,2). We can expand this in terms of the binding energies, and see that it will happen only for nuclei for which B/A is decreasing with A. The difference in energy between X and  $Y + \alpha$  is denoted as Q. Since the velocities are not relativistic, the energy can be written as  $Q = p_{\alpha}^2/2m_{\alpha} + p_{Y}^2/2m_{Y}$ , and since  $m_{\alpha} \ll m_{Y}$  but  $|p_{\alpha}| = |p_{Y}|$  the energy is almost all kept by the  $\alpha$ .

Different decays have wildly different half-lives: the empirical law they follow is called the *Geiger-Nuttal* (2.10.2). It is very closely followed if we fix an even Z and vary N keeping it even as well.

$$\log(t_{1/2}) \propto ZQ^{-1/2}$$
 (2.10.2)

This can be understood with quantum tunneling. First of all, we assume the  $\alpha$  can be spontaneously formed inside the nucleus as a cluster since it is a stable configuration, with some probability  $\mathbb{P}_{\text{formation}} = \left| \left\langle \psi(A,Z) \right| \left( \left| \psi(A-4,Z-2) \right\rangle \otimes \left| \psi(4,2) \right\rangle \right) \right|^2$ .

$$\mathcal{D}_{mm'}^{j}(\alpha,\beta,\gamma) = \left\langle jm' \middle| \exp(-i\alpha J_z) \exp(-i\beta J_y) \exp(-i\gamma J_z) \middle| jm \right\rangle$$
 (2.9.2)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>They are the matrix elements of rotations with respect to the harmonics:

Then, this  $\alpha$  will collide with the nucleus border at some rate, which we estimate as f = 2r/v. A very rough estimate gives  $1/f \sim \hbar/\text{MeV} \approx 200\,\text{MeVfm}/(c\text{MeV}) \approx 10^{-21}\,\text{s}$ .

So, we have to understand what happens at the nucleus border. We model the potential as a well, flat inside the nuclear radius R; outside, the  $\alpha$  will feel the Coulomb repulsion of the nucleus

$$V(r) = \frac{e^2}{4\pi\varepsilon_0} \frac{Z_Y Z_\alpha}{r} [r \ge R] - V_0[0 \le r < R]$$
 (2.10.3)

Where  $[\cdot]$  is the Iverson bracket.

The  $\alpha$  can tunnel through the potential barrier: how likely is it to do so? Let us call this probability T. We can calculate it modelling our potential as many infinitesimal rectangular slices, let us also call r = b the point at which V(r) = Q. Then,

$$T = \exp\left(-2\int_{R}^{b} \sqrt{\frac{2m(V(r) - Q)}{\hbar^2}} \,\mathrm{d}r\right) \tag{2.10.4}$$

since we know the wavefunction to be exponentially depressed as  $\exp\left(-\Delta r\sqrt{2m(V-Q)/\hbar^2}\right)$  for a constant V>Q and finite  $\Delta r$ , so we make  $\Delta r$  small and then we multiply together all the infinitesimal exponential probability decreases. The factor 2 comes from the fact that, to get the probabilities, we must take the square modulus.

This can be analytically calculated: if  $T = \exp(-2G)$ , then

$$G = 2\frac{Ze^2}{\hbar c}\sqrt{\frac{2m_{\alpha}c^2}{Q}}\left(\arccos\left(\sqrt{\frac{Q}{B}}\right) - \sqrt{\left(\frac{Q}{B}\right)\left(1 - \frac{Q}{B}\right)}\right)$$
(2.10.5)

In the end, we can calculate the rate of decay as  $\lambda = \mathbb{P}_{\text{formation}} Tf$ . As always, the decay law is  $N(t) = N_0 \exp(-\lambda t)$ .

The orders of magnitude at play are as follows:  $\mathbb{P}_{\text{formation}} \sim 1$ ,  $f \sim 10^{21}$  Hz,  $G \sim 30 \div 50$ .

# 2.11 $\beta$ decay

A nucleon has its isospin flipped, emitting a  $e^{\pm}$  and an electronic (anti)neutrino. This type of decay is due to the weak interaction.

Since it is a three-body process, we get a continuous spectrum of energies for the electron/positron.

#### **Fermi theory** Our assumptions are:

- 1. we neclect the Coulomb interaction between the electron and the nucleus (this will have to be reconsidered, since it only gives accurate predictions for Z < 10);
- 2. we neglect the recoil of the nucleus after the decay (the mass differences are very large: this will always work);
- 3. we assume  $m_{\nu} = 0$ ;
- 4. we assume the distribution of energy partitions between the electron and neutrino to be uniform.

**Fermi's golden rule** The rate  $\lambda$  of a transition is given by

$$\lambda = \frac{2\pi}{\hbar} |M|^2 \frac{\mathrm{d}n}{\mathrm{d}E} \tag{2.11.1}$$

where  $M = \langle \psi_f | H | \psi_i \rangle$  is the matrix element between the initial and final states, H being the Hamiltonian due to which the transition happpens, dn/dE is the differential phase volume corresponding to the energy E. Note that H is dimensional, it is an energy!

**State density** Recall the momentum dependence of the density of states from equation (2.4.8). Then

$$dn = \left(\frac{4\pi V}{h}\right)^3 p_e^2 dp_e \, p_\nu^2 dp_\nu \tag{2.11.2}$$

The total energy is  $E_0 = E_e + E_{\nu}$ . We work at a fixed electron energy and momentum: so because of condition 3,  $E_{\nu} = p_{\nu}c$ , therefore  $\mathrm{d}p_{\nu} = \mathrm{d}E_0/c$  and  $p_{\nu}^2 = (E_0 - E_e)^2/c^2$ . So we get

$$dn = \left(\frac{4\pi V}{h}\right)^3 \frac{dE_0}{c} \frac{(E_0 - E_e)^2}{c^2} p_e^2 dp_e$$
 (2.11.3)

**Calculation of**  $\lambda$  We can plug this (with the d $E_0$  brought to the left hand side) into equation (2.11.1), but we still have a differential to the right and we fixed  $p_e$ , so we will not obtain  $\lambda$  but the d $\lambda$  from this momentum to  $p_e + \mathrm{d}p_e$ .

$$d\lambda = \frac{2\pi}{\hbar} |M|^2 \left(\frac{4\pi V}{h}\right)^3 F(Z_Y, E_e) \frac{(E_0 - E_e)^2}{c^3} p_e^2 dp_e = |M|^2 \frac{(4\pi V)^3}{c^3 h^4} F(Z_Y, E_e) (E_0 - E_e)^2 p_e^2 dp_e$$
(2.11.4)

We get  $\lambda$  by integrating this expression. We also added a factor to account for the asymmetry between electrons and positrons: the former are slowed down by electrostatic attraction when leaving the nucleus, the latter are accelerated. So, we multiply  $\lambda$  by  $F(Z_Y, E_e) = 2\pi\eta/(1 - \exp(-2\pi\eta))$ , where  $\eta = \mp \alpha Z_Y/\beta_e$ ,  $\alpha$  being the fine-structure constant.

$$\lambda = |M|^2 \frac{(4\pi V)^3}{c^3 h^4} F(Z_Y, E_e) \int (E_0 - E_e)^2 p_e^2 \left[ 0 \le (p_e c)^2 \le E_0^2 - m_e^2 c^4 \right] dp_e$$
 (2.11.5)

Fermi-Kurie plot Flipping equation (2.11.4) around, we find that

$$K(E_e) = \sqrt{\frac{d\lambda}{dp_e}} F^{-1} p_e^{-2} \propto E_0 - E_e$$
 (2.11.6)

a testable prediction, which is experimentally verified. Sometimes we get sums of different lines (in the limit in which the Ks are additive? maybe we can say that the  $d\lambda s$  are additive and small so we make it work...).

If we had  $m_{\nu} \neq 0$ , the K plot would no longer be linear in  $E_e$  (instead of  $p_{\nu}^2 = (E_0 - E_e)^2/c^2$  we would have had  $p_{\nu}^2 = (E_0 - E_e)\sqrt{(E_0 - E_e)^2 - m_{\nu}^2 c^4/c^2}$ ). This allows us to measure the neutrino mass.

From equation (2.11.5) we can calculate  $ft \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} F(Z_Y, E_e) \log(2)/\lambda$ . This is known as the ft value: it gives an estimate of  $|M|^{-2}$ . We usually plot its base-10 logarithm, since it varies through many orders of magnitude.

**Calculating the matrix element** We assume the interaction Hamiltonian is in the form  $H = g\delta^3(r_e - r)\delta^3(r_\nu - r)$ . In the calculation of M this will make all the integrals in the same variable, r. g's value cannot be determined theoretically, experimentally  $g \approx 10^{-4} \, \text{MeV fm}^3$ . We must evaluate an expression as follows:

$$M = \int \psi_{\nu}^{*} \psi_{e}^{*} \psi_{\text{nuc-f}}^{*} \psi_{\text{nuc-i}} dr$$
 (2.11.7)

where all the wavefunctions are evaluated at r. If the electron and neutrino wavefunctions are planar waves, say  $\psi_e = \exp(-ipr/\hbar) \sim 1 - ipr/\hbar + o(r)$ . But we integrate only over the support of the nuclear wavefunctions: let us assume  $r = r_0 A^{1/3} \approx 3 \div 5$  and  $p = \sqrt{E_e^2/c^2 - m_e^2c^2} \approx 1\,\text{MeV/c}$ . Then we see that the first order term is negligible. We do this for the electron and neutrino, getting  $M = g \langle \text{nuc - f} | \text{nuc - i} \rangle / V$ , where V is the volume we assume the electron and neutrino wavefunctions are normalized to have support in.

This is equivalent to assuming  $p \wedge r = L = 0$  for the electron and neutrino.

**Transition types** We call the nuclear angular momentum *I*, the leptons' total angular momentum and spin *L* and *S*. Then

$$\vec{I}_i = \vec{I}_f + \vec{L} + \vec{S}$$
 (2.11.8)

we distinguish

- 1. Fermi transitions: S = 0.
- 2. Gamow-Teller transitions: S = 1.
- 1. Permitted transitions:  $\Delta L = 0$ , they also have no change in parity since  $\Delta \pi = (-)^{\Delta L}$ . They are the ones we described in the last paragraph.
- 2. Super-permitted transitions: the starting and ending nuclear configurations are almost identical. This happens with specular nuclei.  $\log_{10}(ft) \sim 3.5$ .
- 3. Prohibited transitions (of various orders): every additional term in the expansion of the lepton wavefunctions depresses  $|M|^2$  by a factor  $10^4$ , so they get increasingly unlikely.

## 2.12 $\gamma$ decay

 $\gamma$  radiation is almost monochromatic, since excited states usually live for around  $10^{-12}\,\mathrm{s}\approx 1/6.6\times 10^{-4}\,\mathrm{eV}$ ; its wavelength is also much longer than the nucleus.

The energy lost from the excited state is almost all with the  $\gamma$ : if we assume that energy and momentum are conserved we get  $\Delta E = E_{\gamma} - E_{\gamma}^2/(2M)$  since  $E_{\gamma} = p_{\rm recoil}$ . The solution of this is:

$$E_{\gamma} = M \left( -1 \pm \sqrt{1 + \frac{\Delta E}{M}} \right) \approx \Delta E - \frac{\Delta E^2}{M} \approx \Delta E$$
 (2.12.1)

**Selection rules** We must have  $\vec{l}_i = \vec{l}_f + \vec{L}$ , and the angular momentum of the photon must be nonzero. Also, let us call EL the electric (due to moving charge) radiation with momentum L and ML the analogous magnetic (due to moving current) radiation. We call it  $2^L$ -pole radiation. Then it can be shown that

$$EL \iff \Delta \pi = (-)^L \qquad ML \iff \Delta \pi = (-)^{L+1}$$
 (2.12.2)

**Emitted power** Let us compare the emitted power to the first order of an electric dipole d vs a magnetic dipole  $\mu$ , using the EM-fields formulas:  $P(E1) \sim \omega^4 d^2/c^3$ , while  $P(M1) \sim \omega^4 \mu^2/c^5$ . In general, denoting  $\sigma = E$ , M:

$$P(\sigma L) = \frac{2c}{\varepsilon_0} \frac{(L+1)}{L((2L+1)!!)^2} \left(\frac{\omega}{c}\right)^{2L+2} \mathcal{M}(\sigma L)^2$$
 (2.12.3)

where  $\mathcal{M}$  can be interpreted, in a quantum setting, as a *transition amplitude*, whose square modulus is a transition probability. To calculate  $\mathcal{M}$  we should use the multipole operators, which for the electric transitions are  $O(EL) = er_i^L Y_{i,LM}$  (i labels the particles in the nucleus) while the magnetic ones are much more complicated.

In general,  $\mathcal{M}(\sigma L) = \langle \psi_f | O(\sigma L) | \psi_i \rangle$ . Dimensionally,  $[\mathcal{M}] = Cm^L$ .

We can find the rate of photon emission as  $T(\sigma L) = P(\sigma L)/\hbar\omega$ .

$$T(\sigma L) = \frac{8\pi\alpha c(L+1)}{e^2L(2L+1)!!^2} \left(\frac{\omega}{c}\right)^{2L+1} \left|\mathcal{M}(\sigma L)\right|^2$$
(2.12.4)

**Weisskopf estimations** Instead of the multipole operators, we use brutal estimates (the radial wavefunctions are proportional to  $[r \in \text{nucleus}]$ , the angular integrals are 1):

$$\left|\mathcal{M}(EL)\right|^2/e^2 = \frac{1}{4\pi} \left(\frac{3}{3+L}\right)^2 (r_0 A^{1/3})^{2L}$$
 (2.12.5a)

$$|\mathcal{M}(ML)|^2 \propto \left(\frac{3}{3+L}\right)^2 (r_0 A^{1/3})^{2L-2}$$
 (2.12.5b)

The ratio of the magnetic to electric matrix square element is something like  $0.31A^{-2/3} \sim 10^{-2}$ . The take-away is: when *L* increases by 1, the transition probability decreases by a factor  $10^4 \div 10^5$ .

In the end, setting  $R = r_0 A^{1/3}$ , we get

$$T(EL) \approx \frac{2\alpha(L+1)}{L(2L+1)!!^2} \left(\frac{\omega}{c}\right)^{2L+1} \left(\frac{3}{3+L}\right)^2 R^{2L}$$
 (2.12.6)

Around magic numbers this prediction is close to being verified; mid-shell we see tens or hundreds more than it. The half-life of the decay is given by  $t_{1/2} = \log(2)/T$ 

**Experimental methods** We can experimentally determine the parity of a  $\Gamma$  transition: we look at the differential cross section  $d\sigma/d\theta$  wrt the azimuth angle  $\theta$ , if it is odd then the change in parity is (-), if it is even the change in parity is (+).

Also, we can look at the number of nodes  $d\sigma/d\theta$ , which will be equal to the order of the Legendre polynomial of the radiation.

#### 2.13 Matter and radiation

**Cross sections** The flux of particles  $\varphi = \text{\#particles}/(At) = nv$  (where A is the area through which the particles pass, t is the time interval, n is the particle density and v is the velocity) decays like  $\Delta \varphi = -\varphi \sigma n_t \Delta x$ , where  $n_t$  is the particle density in the target, and the proportionality constant  $\sigma$  [m²] is called the scattering cross section.

There are three types of interaction between photons and matter. Photoelectric is dominant at low energies, Compton at mid energies, pair production at high energies. As *Z* of the material increases, the Compton-dominance region shrinks (on a log plot, somewhat symmetrically around 1 MeV).

**Photoelectric** :  $\sigma \sim Z^{4\div 5}/E_{\gamma}^3$ , for  $E_{\gamma} < 400$  keV.

**Compton**: continuous spectrum,

$$E'_{\gamma} = \frac{E_{\gamma}}{1 + (E_{\gamma}/m_e c^2)(1 - \cos(\theta))}$$
 or  $\frac{1}{E'_{\gamma}} - \frac{1}{E_{\gamma}} = \frac{m}{1 - \cos(\theta)}$  (2.13.1)

Remember: the initial electron mass goes into the energy count! The maximum energy transferred to the electron is at  $\theta \to \pi$ ,  $E'_{\gamma} - E_{\gamma} \to m_e c^2/2$ .

**Pair production** Near a nucleus, we can have some momentum transfer and see  $\gamma \to e^- + e^+$ .

 $\alpha$  **particle energy transfer** The collision is elastic and the  $\alpha$ 's mass is much larger than the electron's: the energy transferred is approximately

$$E_e = \frac{4m_e E_\alpha}{M_\alpha} \tag{2.13.2}$$

so, for a regular  $\alpha$ , in the single keV range.

**Bethe-Bloch** It describes the *stopping power* dE/dx of a particle in a medium. We use the following assumptions: the particle has mass M, charge ze, velocity v, the impact parameter wrt the medium electrons is b, the material has Z, A. Imagine a very long cylinder centered around the particle: by Gauss, ignoring the circular faces,

$$\frac{ze}{\varepsilon_0} = \int E_{\perp} \, \mathrm{d}x \, b \, \mathrm{d}\theta = \int eE2\pi b \, \mathrm{d}x \tag{2.13.3}$$

The momentum transferred to the electron is the integral of  $dp_{\perp} = F_{\perp} dt = eE_{\perp} dt$ . Also, recall dt = dx / v. Then

$$\Delta p_{\perp} = \int eE \, dt = \int eE \frac{2\pi b}{2\pi b} \frac{dx}{v} = \frac{ze}{\varepsilon_0} \frac{e}{2\pi bv}$$
 (2.13.4)

So, at fixed *b* and electron position, we can calculate  $\Delta E = \Delta p^2/2m_e$ .

But this will hold for all the electrons, and there are N of them, so  $\Delta E_{\text{tot}} = N\Delta E$ . We can write N = nV. If we have the density  $\rho$ , the (approximate) molar mass A, then  $n = ZN_A\rho/A$  since there are Z electrons per atom. Also,  $V = \int 2\pi b \, db \, dx$ .

Putting it all together, and calculating the energy difference for the particle, which is minus that of the electron:

$$-\Delta E = \int \left(\frac{ze}{\varepsilon_0} \frac{e}{2\pi bv}\right)^2 \frac{1}{2m_e} \frac{ZN_A \rho}{A} 2\pi b \, db \, dx \qquad (2.13.5a)$$

$$-\frac{\mathrm{d}E}{\mathrm{d}x} = \left(\frac{ze^2}{4\pi\varepsilon_0}\right)^2 \frac{4\pi Z N_A \rho}{m_e v^2 A} \int \frac{\mathrm{d}b}{b}$$
 (2.13.5b)

$$-\frac{\mathrm{d}E}{\mathrm{d}x} = \left(\frac{ze^2}{4\pi\varepsilon_0}\right)^2 \frac{4\pi Z N_A \rho}{m_e v^2 A} \log\left(\frac{m_e v^2}{h \langle v_e \rangle}\right) \tag{2.13.5c}$$

where we used  $b_{\rm max}=2v/\langle v_e\rangle$ , since if the time it takes the electron to oscillate  $(1/\langle v\rangle)$  is larger than the time it takes the interaction to occur (b/2v), half of the path of the particle) then the electron will not behave as a point particle; also  $b_{\rm min}=h/p_e=h/(m_ev)$  since then the particle will pass *through* the electron, and quantum stuff will happen. We introduce  $I=h\langle v\rangle$  as the ionization potential of the material, and some terms coming from relativistic considerations

$$S = -\frac{\mathrm{d}E}{\mathrm{d}x} = \left(\frac{ze^2}{4\pi\varepsilon_0}\right)^2 \frac{4\pi Z N_A \rho}{m_e v^2 A} \left(\log\left(\frac{2m_e v^2}{I(1-\beta^2)}\right) - \beta^2\right) \tag{2.13.6}$$

for energies between 100 keV and 1 GeV, the shape of the curve is roughly  $S \propto E^{-0.8}$ .

**Range** It is the distance travelled by the particle: we can compute it as

$$R = \int \frac{dx}{dE} dE = \int_0^{E_0} \frac{dE}{-S}$$
 (2.13.7)

plugging in a rough version of formula (2.13.6) (we get this by dividing and multiplying by M, the mass of the particle):  $S \approx azE^{-1} = 2azM/E$ . Then

$$R \approx \frac{1}{2a} \frac{E_0^2}{z^2 M} \tag{2.13.8}$$

# Chapter 3

# **Quantum Information**

#### 3.1 The basics

**Qubit** It can be physically realized with any two-state system. It is a complex superposition of  $|0\rangle$  and  $|1\rangle$ . Thanks to normalization and U(1) gauge invariance (a ket is defined up to a phase) we can always make  $|0\rangle$ 's coefficient real and  $\in [0,1]$ : the ket can always be written as

$$|\psi\rangle = \cos\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right)|0\rangle + \sin\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right)e^{i\varphi}|1\rangle$$
 (3.1.1)

with  $\varphi \in [0, 2\pi]$  and  $\theta \in [0, \pi]$ : these can be interpreted as angles on a sphere. The fact that  $\theta$  is divided by two comes from the coordinates we choose in  $S^3 \subset \mathbb{C}^2$ .

We can use an *n*-qubit system:

$$|\psi\rangle = \sum_{i=0}^{2^n - 1} a_i |i\rangle \tag{3.1.2}$$

where  $|i\rangle$  is a base state of the tensor product space of the n Hilbert spaces:  $|i\rangle = |\alpha_0\rangle_0 \otimes |\alpha_1\rangle_1 \otimes \ldots |\alpha_{n-1}\rangle_{n-1}$ ; the  $\alpha_j$  are the components of the representation of i in binary:  $\alpha_0\alpha_1\ldots\alpha_{n-1}$  (with  $\alpha_j=0,1$ ). This is called the *computational basis*.

We assume the state to be normalized:  $\sum_{i} |a_{i}|^{2} = 1$ 

**Entanglement** A state  $|\psi\rangle$  is called *entangled* if there are no subsystem kets  $|\psi_i\rangle_i$ , i=A, B such that  $|\psi\rangle = |\psi_A\rangle_A \otimes |\psi_B\rangle_B$ .

## 3.2 Quantum gates

They are unitary trasformations:  $U: \mathcal{H} \to \mathcal{H}$ ,  $U^{\dagger}U = UU^{\dagger} = 1$ .

They can be decomposed into smaller gates, which are in general  $2n \times 2n$  complex unitary matrices, but we will usually just use n = 1, 2.

If two gates are represented by  $2 \times 2$  matrices, indexed in the computational basis as  $A_i^j$  and  $B_k^l$  with i, j, k, l = 0, 1, then their tensor product will be

$$[A_{i}^{j}B_{k}^{l}] = [A \otimes B]_{ik}^{jl} = [A \otimes B]_{M}^{N}$$
(3.2.1)

where we grouped the indices ik = M and jl = N, in order to write two-component fourth order tensors as four-dimensional order two matrices. What are M and N then? i,j and so on are binary digits, so it is natural to interpret M and N as numbers between 0 and 3 written

in binary. Of course, this can be generalized to any order, keeping the same pattern, and be applied to vectors as well.

**Hadamard** It is a *one-qubit gate* which switches from the computational basis to the eigenstates of  $\sigma_z$ , which we call  $|+\rangle = H|0\rangle \propto |0\rangle + |1\rangle$  and  $|-\rangle = H|1\rangle \propto |0\rangle - |1\rangle$ .

$$H = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1\\ 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \tag{3.2.2}$$

We can also express it, for the basis states, as  $H|x\rangle = \sqrt{1/2} \sum_{y=0}^{1} (-)^{xy} |y\rangle$ .

**Phase** It is a *one-qubit gate* which gives a phase to a state: applying it to a generic qubit, written as (3.1.1), we get  $R_z(\delta) | \psi \rangle = \cos(\theta/2) | 0 \rangle + \exp(i(\varphi + \delta)) \sin(\theta/2) | 1 \rangle$ .

$$R_z(\delta) = \exp(i\delta\sigma_z) = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & \exp(i\delta) \end{bmatrix}$$
 (3.2.3)

**Control not** It is a *two-qubit gate* which cannot be written as a tensor product of one-qubit gates.

$$CNOT = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & & \\ 0 & 1 & & \\ & & 0 & 1 \\ & & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$
 (3.2.4)

It generates entanglement: let us apply it to the separable state  $\alpha |00\rangle + \beta |10\rangle$ : it returns  $\alpha |00\rangle + \beta |11\rangle$ , which is entangled.

**Control phase** It is a *two-qubit gate*:

$$CPHASE(\delta) = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & R_z(\delta) \end{bmatrix}$$
 (3.2.5)

where we used the phase gate (3.2.3).

It can be written as CPHASE( $\delta$ ) =  $[\mathbb{1} \otimes R_z(\delta/2)][\text{CNOT}][\mathbb{1} \otimes R_z(-\delta/2)][\text{CNOT}][R_z(\delta/2) \otimes \mathbb{1}]$ : the steps (multiplying from right to left, starting from just  $[R_z(\delta/2) \otimes \mathbb{1}]$ ) are as follows:

We can get any state  $|\psi\rangle$  written as (3.1.1) with Hadamard and phase-shift:

$$|\psi\rangle = R_z(\pi/2 + \varphi)HR_z(\theta)H|0\rangle$$
 (3.2.7a)

$$= \frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} 1 + e^{i\theta} \\ i\left(e^{i\varphi} - e^{i(\theta + \varphi)}\right) \end{bmatrix}$$
 (3.2.7b)

$$= \frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} e^{i\theta/2} + e^{-i\theta/2} \\ i^{-1} \left( e^{i\theta/2} - e^{-i\theta/2} \right) e^{i\varphi} \end{bmatrix}$$
 (3.2.7c)

$$= \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\theta/2) \\ \sin(\theta/2)e^{i\varphi} \end{bmatrix}$$
 (3.2.7d)

where in the step (3.2.7c) we used the fact that a quantum state is only defined up to a phase, and multiplied by  $\exp(-i\theta/2)$ .

**Binary function unitarity** In general a function  $f : \{0,1\}^n \to \{0,1\}$  will not be injective, therefore it will not be unitary. In order to represent it as unitary we must "carry over" the input:

$$U_f |x\rangle |0\rangle = |x\rangle |f(x)\rangle \tag{3.2.8}$$

in order to have a more general trasformation we define it for arbitrary input on the second system:

$$U_f |x\rangle |y\rangle = |x\rangle |y \oplus f(x)\rangle$$
(3.2.9)

where  $\oplus$  is bitwise XOR.

**Parallelism** We can do lots of computation with a single gate: say we have a state like (3.1.2), then

$$U_{f} \sum_{x=0}^{2^{n}-1} a_{x} |x\rangle |y\rangle = \sum_{x=0}^{2^{n}-1} a_{x} |x\rangle |y \oplus f(x)\rangle$$
 (3.2.10)

For this to be really different from classical computing, however, a significant portion of the  $2^n$  coefficients  $a_x$  must be nonzero. We now will show how to produce the state in which they are all equal to  $2^{-n/2}$ , assuming we can produce  $|0\rangle^{\otimes n}$ . We apply a Hadamard gate to every qubit, which carries a normalization and a factor of  $(-)^{x_iy_i}$ , so we get:

$$H^{\otimes n} |x\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2^n}} \sum_{y=0}^{2^n - 1} (-)^{x \cdot y} |y\rangle$$
 (3.2.11)

And the desired state can be found by setting x = 0. Do note that while this looks "entangled" we found it by applying single-qubit gates: it is still separable (we can see this from the fact that its density matrix has the same value in every entry, so its rank is 1).

**No cloning** A *general* cloning unitary operator would look like:  $U|x\rangle|0\rangle = |x\rangle|x\rangle$ . Let us assume we have one, and let us apply it to two different states:  $A = U|\psi\rangle|0\rangle = |\psi\rangle|\psi\rangle$  and  $B = U|\varphi\rangle|0\rangle = |\varphi\rangle|\varphi\rangle$ . Now, let us compute the scalar product of A and B:

$$A \cdot B = \langle \psi | \langle 0 | U^{\dagger} U | \varphi \rangle | 0 \rangle \tag{3.2.12a}$$

$$= \langle \psi | \varphi \rangle \langle 0 | 0 \rangle U^{\dagger} U \tag{3.2.12b}$$

$$= \langle \psi | \varphi \rangle \tag{3.2.12c}$$

but also

$$A \cdot B = \langle \psi | \langle \psi | | \varphi \rangle | \varphi \rangle \tag{3.2.13a}$$

$$= \langle \psi | \varphi \rangle^2 \tag{3.2.13b}$$

and in general  $\langle \psi | \varphi \rangle \neq 0, \pm 1$ , so we found a contradiction. Note that we *can* create a partial cloning machine which works only on the basis states of some basis: we extend by linearity the desired cloning. If we want to clone the computational basis, the gate is the CNOT (see 'Control not' on page 49).

Alternative proof: apply  $U(|x\rangle + |y\rangle) \otimes |0\rangle = (|x\rangle + |y\rangle)^{\otimes 2}$  (a separable state), but U must be linear, so  $U(|x\rangle + |y\rangle) \otimes |0\rangle = |x\rangle |x\rangle + |y\rangle |y\rangle$ , generally an entangled state.

# 3.3 Algorithmic complexity

We can distinguish algorithms by how many resources (computation time, RAM, ...) they require:

- 1. *P*: classical polynomial time;
- 2. *NP*: classical nondeterministic polynomial time: there exists a nondeterministic Turing machine<sup>1</sup> which finds the solution in polynomial time the solution can thus be verified in polynomial time;
- 3. NP hard: problems to which every P problem can be reduced in polynomial time;
- 4. NPC: NP problems which are also NP hard;
- 5. *BPP*: bounded error probabilistic polynomial: it can give us the correct answer in polynomial time with probability  $\mathbb{P} > 1/2$ .
- 6. BQP: bounded error quantum polynomial: it is a quantum algorithm which can give us the correct answer in polynomial time with probability  $\mathbb{P} > 1/2$ .

Surely  $P \subseteq BPP \subseteq BQP$ . We are not sure whether  $BQP \subseteq BPP$ .

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>Same as a regular Turing machine, except that in a certain configuration it can have different actions, and in a certain sense it "tries them all".

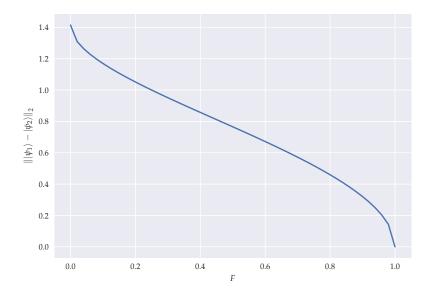


Figure 3.1: Norm of difference vs fidelity: a plot of equation (3.4.2)

# 3.4 Fidelity

We introduce a notion of distance between states:

$$F = \left| \left\langle \psi_1 \middle| \psi_2 \right\rangle \right|^2 \tag{3.4.1}$$

*F* is monotonous in  $\||\psi_1\rangle - |\psi_2\rangle\|_2$ . *F* is also the  $\cos^2(\theta/2)$ , where  $\theta$  is the angle between the two vectors in Bloch space.

Let us prove these statements: first of all notice that  $\||\psi_1\rangle - |\psi_2\rangle\|_2 = \sqrt{2-2\operatorname{Re}\langle\psi_1|\psi_2\rangle}$ . Now, the scalar product  $\langle\psi_1|\psi_2\rangle$  is in general a complex number but we can rotate the starting functions by an arbitrary phase, making it real and positive. So we get  $\operatorname{Re}\langle\psi_1|\psi_2\rangle = |\langle\psi_1|\psi_2\rangle| = \sqrt{F}$ . Then, we can see that

$$\left\| \left| \psi_1 \right\rangle - \left| \psi_2 \right\rangle \right\|_2 = \sqrt{2(1 - \sqrt{F})} \tag{3.4.2}$$

Now, we want to prove  $F = \cos^2(\theta/2)$ : let U be a unitary transformation which maps  $|\psi_1\rangle$  to  $|0\rangle$ . We can rewrite  $F = \left|\left\langle \psi_1 \middle| U^\dagger U \middle| \psi_2 \right\rangle\right|^2$ . We can expand the applications of U to the vectors to get  $\left|\left\langle 0 \middle| \left(\alpha \middle| 0 \right\rangle + \beta \middle| 1 \right\rangle \right)\right|^2$ .

Now, since states are always defined up to a phase, we can pick  $\alpha$  to be real and positive. Then we have put the state  $U|\psi_1\rangle$  in the canonical form (3.1.1), and the result follows.

## 3.5 Quantum teleportation

It is possible to clone a generic quantum state  $|\psi\rangle = \alpha |0\rangle + \beta |1\rangle$  assuming we start with two entangled qubits, one in the starting location and one at the destination: so, if these two qubits are called *A* and *B* and the state we want to transmit is in subsystem *C*, we start with

$$\left(\frac{|00\rangle + |11\rangle}{\sqrt{2}}\right)_{AB} \otimes |\psi\rangle_{C} \tag{3.5.1}$$

The protocol is this:

- 1. Apply the gate  $C_CNOT_A$ ;
- 2. apply the gate  $H_C$ ;
- 3. measure *A* and *C* in the computational basis: call the result *x*;
- 4. apply a gate  $V_x$ , selected according to table 3.1, to B.

$$\begin{array}{c|cc}
x & V_x \\
\hline
00 & 1 \\
01 & \sigma_z \\
10 & \sigma_x \\
11 & \sigma_z \sigma_x
\end{array}$$

Table 3.1: Possibilities for gate  $V_x$ .

Possibly, when Montangero wrote AC = 01 he meant A = 1 and C = 0.

We can realize all of this with the gates CNOT, Hadamard and  $\sigma_z$  (we can recover  $\sigma_x$  as  $\sigma_x = H\sigma_z H$ .

# 3.6 Quantum interferometry

**Beam splitter** We call the sides of the BS A and B, and denote the absence or presence of light on either side by  $|0,1\rangle_{A,B}$ . Then the action of the beam splitter is unitary and can be represented in the partial basis  $|0\rangle_A \otimes |1\rangle_B$ ,  $|1\rangle_A \otimes |0\rangle_B$  as

$$U_{BS} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & i \\ i & 1 \end{bmatrix} \tag{3.6.1}$$

Note that  $U_{BS}^2 = i\sigma_x$  in the BS-side basis: if we build a Mach-Zender interferometer, that is, we chain two beam-splitters, the light from the two paths interferes and we get some only on one side of the BS (the side opposite of the starting one).

**Bomb detection** If we block one of the paths between the detectors, around half of the time the light will hit this obstacle (our 'bomb'). Around half the time it will go to the second BS, and then a quarter of the time it will be detected on either side of the BS. On the other hand, if there is no obstacle, we will see photons *only* on a certain side of the final BS.

So around 1/4 of the time we will have detected the bomb without the photon actually having been there.

#### 3.7 Zeno effect

We will work with  $\hbar = 1$ . We look of the *survival probability* with which we will retain our starting state: if our evolution operator is  $U = \exp(-iHt)$ , this probability is  $\mathbb{P} = A^*A$ , where  $A = \langle \psi_0 | \psi(t) \rangle$  and  $| \psi(t) \rangle = U | \psi_0 \rangle$ .

How does this probability look like for small t? We can expand, for a small  $\delta t$ :

$$U \sim 1 - iH\delta t - H^2 \delta t^2 \tag{3.7.1}$$

then we will have

$$A = \langle \psi_0 | \left( \mathbb{1} - iH\delta t - H^2 \delta t^2 \right) | \psi_0 \rangle = 1 - i \langle H \rangle_0 \, \delta t - \frac{1}{2} \left\langle H^2 \right\rangle_0 \, \delta t^2 \tag{3.7.2}$$

so we can calculate  $\mathbb{P}$ :

$$\mathbb{P} = \left| 1 - i \langle H \rangle_0 \, \delta t - \frac{1}{2} \left\langle H^2 \right\rangle_0 \, \delta t^2 \right|^2 = 1 - \delta t^2 \left( \left\langle H^2 \right\rangle_0 - \left\langle H \right\rangle_0^2 \right) \tag{3.7.3}$$

Equation (3.7.3) is accurate to the order  $\delta t^3$ , since we only ignored a fourth order term. The term multiplying  $\delta t^2$  can be interpreted as the inverse of a characteristic time:

$$\tau = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\langle H^2 \rangle_0 - \langle H \rangle_0^2}} = \frac{1}{\Delta H_0} \tag{3.7.4}$$

**Repeated measurements** If we measure some observable with  $|\psi_0\rangle$  as an eigenspace, a fraction  $t^2/\tau^2$  of the time we will get something different from  $|\psi_0\rangle$ .

So, if in a long time t we measured N times, the probability of the system having remained in the original state is at least  $\mathbb{P}(t) \geq \mathbb{P}^N(t/N)$ : we consider the case in which the system remained in the state for *all* the measurements. The latter pertains to a small time so we can apply equation (3.7.3):

$$\mathbb{P} \ge \mathbb{P}^N \left( \frac{t}{N} \right) = \left( 1 - \frac{t^2}{N^2 \tau^2} \right)^N \tag{3.7.5}$$

if we fix the inverse of the measurement rate N/t = R this becomes  $\mathbb{P} \ge x^t = \exp(t \log x)$ , with  $x = (1 - 1/R^2\tau^2)^R$ , so  $\log x = R \log(1 - 1/R^2\tau^2) < 0$ . So, we call  $-\log x = \gamma_{\text{eff}} > 0$ : then

$$\mathbb{P} \ge e^{-\gamma_{\text{eff}}t} \tag{3.7.6}$$

Note that as  $R \to \infty$ ,  $\gamma_{\rm eff} \sim R^{-1} \tau^{-2}$ .

An example of nonunitary evolution We consider a Hamiltonian like  $H = \Omega \sigma_x$ , which might be that of a spin-1/2 particle, polarized along z, in a magnetic field along x. Say our system starts at  $|\psi_0\rangle = |0\rangle$ . Then the evolution looks like

$$\exp(-iHt)|0\rangle = \cos(\Omega t)|0\rangle - i\sin(\Omega t)|1\rangle \tag{3.7.7}$$

We can calculate the quantities from section 3.7:  $A = \cos(\Omega t)$  and  $\mathbb{P} = \cos^2(\Omega t)$ , for small t:  $\mathbb{P} \sim 1 - \Omega^2 t^2$ . We recognise the expression for the Zeno time: in this case  $\tau = \Omega^{-1}$ 

Let us introduce the nonunitary part: we change *H* to

$$H_{\text{int}} = \begin{bmatrix} -iV \\ \Omega \\ 0 \\ +iV \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \mathbb{1} \\ \sigma_x \\ \sigma_y \\ \sigma_z \end{bmatrix} = -iV\mathbb{1} + \vec{h} \cdot \vec{\sigma} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \Omega \\ \Omega & -2iV \end{bmatrix}$$
(3.7.8)

to represent interaction with a second lower-energy system, to which our first one can decay if it is in the state  $|1\rangle$ . Can we get a Zeno-like effect with this kind of interaction, and without *measuring* anything? The evolution of this new Hamiltonian will look like

$$\exp(-itH) = e^{-tV} \exp\left(-it\vec{h} \cdot \vec{\sigma}\right) = e^{-tV} \left(\cosh(ht)\mathbb{1} - i\frac{\vec{\sigma} \cdot \vec{h}}{h} \sinh(ht)\right)$$
(3.7.9)

where  $h = \sqrt{V^2 - \Omega^2} \in \mathbb{R}$ , since we assume the coupling is strong  $(V \gg \Omega)$ .

This comes from the fact that for a unit vector  $\vec{n}$ :  $(\vec{n} \cdot \vec{\sigma})^n = 1$ ) if N is odd,  $\vec{n} \cdot \vec{\sigma}$  otherwise: thus we can show that

$$\exp(i\theta(\hat{n}\cdot\sigma)) = \cos(\theta)\mathbb{1} + i(\hat{n}\cdot\sigma)\sin(\theta) \tag{3.7.10}$$

So, we can compute  $A = \langle U \rangle_0$ :

$$A = \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 + \frac{V}{h} \right) e^{-(V-h)t} + \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 - \frac{V}{h} \right) e^{-(V+h)t}$$
(3.7.11)

*V* is close to *h* but slightly larger, so both the exponentials' arguments are negative. For large times we can discard the quickly-decaying second exponential, and be left with

$$\mathbb{P} = \left| \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 + \frac{V}{h} \right) e^{-(V-h)t} \right|^2 \sim \left( 1 + \frac{\Omega^2}{2V^2} \right) \exp\left( -t \frac{\Omega^2}{V} \right) \tag{3.7.12}$$

So, weird normalizations for small times aside,  $\gamma_{\rm eff} = \Omega^2/V$ , but  $\Omega = \tau^{-1}$ , so V = R, the 'rate of observation': the stronger the coupling, the more the other system influences ours.

### 3.8 Non-unitary evolution

It happens when the particle can escape the system; for example in optical systems there can be a complex index of refraction. The Hamiltonian will look like

$$H = H_0 - iV1 (3.8.1)$$

where  $V \in \mathbb{R}^+$ . The unitary evolution has an i multiplying the Hamiltonian, so we get a decreasing real exponential.

We will have  $A \sim 1 - V\delta t + O(\delta t^2)$ , so  $\mathbb{P} \sim 1 - 2V\delta t + O(\delta t^2)$ : the first derivative is nonzero!

**An example of a nonhermitian Hamiltonian** We consider a system and its environment together:

$$H = \underbrace{\Omega \sigma_{x}}_{\text{system}} + \underbrace{\int d\omega \, |\omega\rangle\langle\omega|}_{\text{environment}} + \underbrace{\sqrt{\frac{\Gamma}{2\pi}} \int d\omega \, g(\omega)(|-\rangle\langle\omega| + |\omega\rangle\langle-|)}_{\text{interaction}}$$
(3.8.2)

Where  $\sigma_x$  is meant to be in the  $|-\rangle$ ,  $|+\rangle$  basis. Now, let us take a generic state  $|\psi\rangle = x(t)|-\rangle + y(t)|+\rangle + \int d\omega z(\omega,t)|\omega\rangle$ .

We will write the Schrödinger equation for the evolution of x, y and z and show that, if we just consider the first two, the effective Hamiltonian looks like the one in (3.7.8).

The system so solve can be separated into

$$i\dot{x} = \Omega y \tag{3.8.3a}$$

$$i\dot{y} = \Omega x + \sqrt{\frac{\Gamma}{2\pi}} \int z \, d\omega \tag{3.8.3b}$$

$$i\dot{z} = \omega z + \sqrt{\frac{\Gamma}{2\pi}}y\tag{3.8.3c}$$

In can be readily verified that, with starting conditions x = 1, y = z = 0, we have

$$z(\omega, t) = -i\sqrt{\frac{\Gamma}{2\pi}} \int_0^t d\tau \, y(\tau) e^{-i\omega(t-\tau)}$$
 (3.8.4)

so we substitute into the equation for y

$$i\dot{y} = \Omega x - i\frac{\Gamma}{2\pi} \int d\omega \int_0^t d\tau \, y(\tau) e^{-i\omega(t-\tau)}$$
(3.8.5)

but  $\int d\omega e^{-i\omega(t-\tau)} = 2\pi\delta(t-\tau)$ : so

$$i\dot{y} = \Omega x - i\Gamma y(t)/2 \tag{3.8.6}$$

The factor 1/2 comes from the fact we integrated a  $\delta$  on the *boundary* of the domain. We can combine the results into

$$i\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \Omega \\ \Omega & -i\Gamma/2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} \tag{3.8.7}$$

# 3.9 Implementation of quantum gates

## 3.9.1 NOT gate

We want to implement a NOT gate ( $\sigma_x$ ): we use a spin-1/2 particle, and two magnetic fields described by a Hamiltonian

$$H = -\mu \left( B_0 \sigma_z + B_1 \left( \cos(\omega t) \sigma_x + \sin(\omega t) \sigma_y \right) \right)$$
 (3.9.1)

So the zeroth field is fixed on *z*, while the other rotates around the *z* axis staying on the *xy* plane.

Let us write the time-dependent Schrödinger equation for a state  $|\psi\rangle=\alpha|0\rangle+\beta|1\rangle$ , applying the Euler identity to the sines and cosines:

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{bmatrix} = -\mu \begin{bmatrix} B_0 & B_1 e^{-i\omega t} \\ B_1 e^{i\omega t} & -B_0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{bmatrix}$$
 (3.9.2)

we can rewrite this introducing the characteristic angular velocities of the two magnetic fields:

$$\omega_0 = -\frac{2\mu B_0}{\hbar} \quad \text{and} \quad \omega_1 = -\frac{2\mu B_1}{\hbar} \tag{3.9.3}$$

where we arbitrarily introduced a factor of 2 to make calculations simpler later.

$$i\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\omega_0}{2}\alpha + \frac{\omega_1}{2}e^{-i\omega t}\beta \\ \frac{\omega_1}{2}e^{i\omega t}\alpha - \frac{\omega_0}{2}\beta \end{bmatrix}$$
(3.9.4)

Now, we want to simplify the  $\omega$  exponentials: so, we use the rotation matrix  $R_z(\omega t)$  (expressed with a global phase to simplify calculations) to change variables into

$$\begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} e^{i\omega t/2} & 0 \\ 0 & e^{-i\omega t/2} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{bmatrix}$$
 (3.9.5)

This is a spin rotation matrix: we go from the eigenstates of  $\sigma_z$  to those of a spin operator aligned with the vector  $(B_1 \cos(\omega t), B_1 \sin(\omega t), B_0)$ . We also need to express the derivatives of  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ , since this is a time-dependent change of variables it will be non-trivial.

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} e^{-i\omega t/2} & 0 \\ 0 & e^{i\omega t/2} \end{bmatrix} \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} (-i\omega/2)e^{-i\omega t/2} & 0 \\ 0 & (+i\omega/2)e^{i\omega t/2} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \end{bmatrix}$$
(3.9.6)

If we substitute this in, bringing all the terms without time derivatives on the right hand side, we get:

$$i \begin{bmatrix} e^{-i\omega t/2} \dot{a} \\ e^{i\omega t/2} \dot{b} \end{bmatrix} = -i \begin{bmatrix} (-i\omega/2)e^{-i\omega t/2}a \\ (+i\omega/2)e^{+i\omega t/2}b \end{bmatrix} + \frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} \omega_0 e^{-i\omega t/2}a + \omega_1 e^{-i\omega t/2}b \\ \omega_1 e^{i\omega t/2}b - \omega_0 e^{i\omega t/2}b \end{bmatrix}$$
(3.9.7)

Notice that both equations are multiplied by an exponential, which we can simplify.

$$i\begin{bmatrix} \dot{a} \\ \dot{b} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} (-\omega/2)a \\ (+\omega/2)b \end{bmatrix} + \frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} \omega_0 a + \omega_1 b \\ \omega_1 b - \omega_0 b \end{bmatrix} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} \omega_0 - \omega & \omega_1 \\ \omega_1 & -(\omega_0 - \omega) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \end{bmatrix}$$
(3.9.8)

We can express this as a Schrödinger equation with a Hamiltonian

$$\widetilde{H} = \frac{\hbar}{2} \begin{bmatrix} \omega_0 - \omega & \omega_1 \\ \omega_1 & -(\omega_0 - \omega) \end{bmatrix} = R_z(\omega t) H R_z(-\omega t)$$
(3.9.9)

So to study the time evolution of the starting system we just need to diagonalize  $\tilde{H}$ . Its eigenvalues are  $E_{1,2}=\pm\hbar/2\sqrt{(\omega_0-\omega)^2+\omega_1^2}\stackrel{\text{def}}{=}\hbar\omega_i/2$  (the notation conflict in the definitions of  $\omega_1$  may be confusing but I only use this notation once). The eigenvectors are the generators of  $\ker(\widetilde{H}-E_i\mathbb{1})$ : the ratios of their components are

$$\frac{b}{a} = \frac{\omega_i - (\omega_0 - \omega)}{\omega_1} = \frac{\pm \sqrt{(\omega_0 - \omega)^2 + \omega_1^2 - (\omega_0 - \omega)}}{\omega_1}$$
(3.9.10)

We call  $\omega_1/(\omega_0-\omega)=\tan(\theta)$ . Then:

$$\frac{b}{a} = \pm \sqrt{1 + \frac{1}{\tan^2(\theta)}} - \frac{1}{\tan(\theta)}$$
 (3.9.11a)

$$\frac{b}{a}\tan(\theta) = \pm\sqrt{1 + \tan^2(\theta)} - 1 = \pm\frac{1}{\cos(\theta)} - 1$$
 (3.9.11b)

$$\frac{b}{a}\sin(\theta) = \pm 1 - \cos(\theta) \tag{3.9.11c}$$

$$\frac{b}{a} = \tan(\theta/2) \qquad \text{or} \qquad \frac{b}{a} = -\frac{1}{\tan(\theta/2)} \tag{3.9.11d}$$

To get step (3.9.11d) we used the identities  $\sin^2(\theta/2) = (1 - \cos(\theta))/2$ ,  $\cos^2(\theta/2) = (1 + \cos(\theta))/2$  and  $\sin(\theta) = 2\sin(\theta/2)\cos(\theta/2)$ .

Now, what we want to look at is the probability of a transition  $\langle 1|U(t)|0\rangle$  (and vice versa, but there is symmetry and we just need to calculate this one).

Making the relation in (3.9.11d) explicit, our eigenfunctions are

$$|E_1\rangle = \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\theta/2) \\ \sin(\theta/2) \end{bmatrix}$$
 and  $|E_2\rangle = \begin{bmatrix} -\sin(\theta/2) \\ \cos(\theta/2) \end{bmatrix}$  (3.9.12)

We express  $|0\rangle$  and  $|1\rangle$  in this basis:  $|0\rangle = \cos(\theta/2) |E_1\rangle - \sin(\theta/2) |E_2\rangle$ ,  $|1\rangle = \sin(\theta/2) |E_1\rangle + \cos(\theta/2) |E_2\rangle$ . Then we can readily apply the evolution operator  $U(t) = \sum_i \exp(E_i t/(i\hbar)) |E_i\rangle\langle E_i|$ :

$$U(t)|0\rangle = \cos(\theta/2) \exp\left(\frac{E_1 t}{i\hbar}\right) |E_1\rangle - \sin(\theta/2) \exp\left(\frac{E_2 t}{i\hbar}\right) |E_2\rangle$$
 (3.9.13)

and the desired transition probability is  $\langle 1|U(t)|0\rangle$ :

$$\left(\sin(\theta/2)\langle E_1| + \cos(\theta/2)\langle E_2|\right) \left(\cos(\theta/2)\exp\left(\frac{E_1t}{i\hbar}\right)|E_1\rangle - \sin(\theta/2)\exp\left(\frac{E_2t}{i\hbar}\right)|E_2\rangle\right)$$
(3.9.14a)

$$= \sin(\theta/2)\cos(\theta/2) \left( \exp\left(\frac{E_1 t}{i\hbar}\right) - \exp\left(\frac{E_2 t}{i\hbar}\right) \right) \tag{3.9.14b}$$

Then, we can compute the transition probability as  $\mathbb{P} = |\langle 1| U(t) |0 \rangle|^2$ . Recall  $\sin(\arctan \theta) = x/\sqrt{1+x^2}$ : for the first part we have

$$\left|\sin(\theta/2)\cos(\theta/2)\right|^2 = \frac{1}{4}\left|\sin\left(\arctan\left(\frac{\omega_1}{\omega_0 - \omega}\right)\right)\right|^2 = \frac{1}{4}\frac{\omega_1^2}{(\omega_0 - \omega)^2 + \omega_1^2}$$
(3.9.15)

for the exponentials, let us call  $E_i = \pm x\hbar/2$  with  $x = \sqrt{(\omega_0 - \omega)^2 + \omega_1^2}$ .

$$\left| \exp\left(\frac{xt}{2i}\right) - \exp\left(\frac{-xt}{2i}\right) \right|^2 = 4 \left| \sin\left(\frac{xt}{2}\right) \right|^2 \tag{3.9.16}$$

So, in the end we get

$$\mathbb{P} = \frac{4}{4} \frac{\omega_1^2}{(\omega_0 - \omega)^2 + \omega_1^2} \sin^2\left(\frac{t}{2}\sqrt{(\omega_0 - \omega)^2 + \omega_1^2}\right)$$
(3.9.17)

Now, recall that the magnetic fields are under our control: we can change  $\omega_{0,1}$  as we wish. So, if we set  $\omega_0 = \omega$  we get

$$\mathbb{P} = \sin^2\left(\frac{t}{2}\sqrt{(\omega_0 - \omega)^2 + \omega_1^2}\right) \tag{3.9.18}$$

therefore our NOT gate is: turn on the magnetic fields and wait for a time such that

$$\frac{t}{2}\sqrt{(\omega_0 - \omega)^2 + \omega_1^2} = \frac{\pi}{2} \tag{3.9.19}$$

#### 3.9.2 CNOT gate

We start with a two-system Hamiltonian like

$$H = -B_0(\mu_1 \sigma_1^z \otimes \mathbb{1}_2 + \mu_2 \mathbb{1}_1 \otimes \sigma_2^z) + J\sigma_1^z \otimes \sigma_2^z$$
 (3.9.20)

this is already diagonal, and looks like:

$$H = \begin{bmatrix} -B_0(\mu_1 + \mu_2) + J & & & \\ & -B_0(\mu_1 - \mu_2) - J & & \\ & & -B_0(-\mu_1 + \mu_2) - J & \\ & & & -B_0(-\mu_1 - \mu_2) + J \end{bmatrix}$$
(3.9.21)

Now: we can add a sinusoidal perturbation Hamiltonian (say, sending LASER photons with energy  $E = \hbar \omega$ ). We want to excite the transitions  $|10\rangle \leftrightarrow |11\rangle$  but not  $|00\rangle \leftrightarrow |01\rangle$ : the energy needed for the former is  $E_1 = 2(B_0\mu_2 + J)$ , for the latter it is  $E_0 = 2(B_0\mu_2 - J)$ .

So, if we set the laser to  $E = E_1$  and keep it on for the right amount of time we can invert the second qubit *only* if the first is in state  $|1\rangle$ .

## 3.10 Density matrices

Say we have a generic observable  $\hat{A} = \sum_i a_i |a_i\rangle\langle a_i|$ , and our has a probability  $p_i$  of being in the state  $|\psi_i\rangle$ : of course we must have  $\sum_i p_i = 1$ . Then, we want to compute the expectation value  $\langle A \rangle$  in this "mixed" state: it will look like

$$\langle A \rangle = \sum_{i,k} p_i a_k \left\langle \psi_i \middle| a_k \right\rangle \left\langle a_k \middle| \psi_i \right\rangle \tag{3.10.1a}$$

$$= \sum_{i,j,k} p_i a_k \langle a_k | \left( \left| a_j \right\rangle \! \left\langle a_j \right| \right) \left| \psi_i \right\rangle \langle \psi_i | a_k \rangle \tag{3.10.1b}$$

$$= \sum_{k} \langle a_{k} | \left( \sum_{\substack{j \\ k \equiv j \text{ since it is} \\ \text{multiplied by } \delta_{jk}}} \left| a_{j} \right\rangle \! \left\langle a_{j} \right| \right) \left( \sum_{i} p_{i} \left| \psi_{i} \right\rangle \! \left\langle \psi_{i} \right| \right) \left| a_{k} \right\rangle$$
 (3.10.1c)

$$= \operatorname{Tr}(A\rho) = \operatorname{Tr}(\rho A) \tag{3.10.1d}$$

So, we have defined

$$\rho \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sum_{k} p_{k} |\psi_{k}\rangle\langle\psi_{k}| \tag{3.10.2}$$

#### **Properties**

- 1. Tr  $\rho = 1$
- 2.  $\rho = \rho^{\dagger}$
- 3.  $\rho \ge 0$
- 4. Tr  $\rho^2 \le 1$

These can be deduced from writing the matrix elements  $\rho_{ij} = \langle i | \rho \langle j |$  in an ON basis, or by noticing that  $\rho$  is a positively-weighted sum of projectors, each of which is self-adjoint.

The first one needs the components approach, I think:  $\rho_{ii} = \sum_{ik} \left| \langle \psi_k | i \rangle \right|^2 = 1$  since they are the components in a basis of a normalized ket.

The last property can be seen by noticing that  $\rho$  is self-adjoint, so it has an orthonormal basis: then squaring it is easy, and all the coefficients are such that  $p_i^2 \le p_i$ .

**Time evolution of a density matrix** How does  $\rho$  evolve? If we have U, we can write the evolution by linearity as

$$\rho(t) = \sum_{k} p_k U |\psi_k\rangle\langle\psi_k| U^{\dagger} = U\rho_0 U^{\dagger}$$
(3.10.3)

If instead we wish to look at the differential formulation, starting from  $i\hbar |\dot{\psi}_k\rangle = H |\psi_k\rangle$  and its adjunct  $-i\hbar \langle \dot{\psi}_k| = \langle \psi_k| H$  we get

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\rho(t) = \sum_{k} p_{k} \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \left( |\psi_{k}\rangle\langle\psi_{k}| \right) = \frac{1}{i\hbar} \sum_{k} p_{k} \left( H \left| \psi_{k} \rangle\langle\psi_{k}| - \left| \psi_{k} \rangle\langle\psi_{k}| H \right) \right) = \frac{[H, \rho]}{i\hbar}$$
(3.10.4)

**Pure states** A density matrix is a *pure state* if it has only one component, in the sense that:  $\rho = |\psi\rangle\langle\psi|$ . The following are equivalent:

- 1.  $\rho$  is a density matrix;
- 2.  $\rho$  has rank 1;
- 3. Tr  $\rho^2 = 1$ .

The quantity  $\text{Tr } \rho^2$  is called the *purity*, and is surely greater than 1/d, d being the dimension of the Hilbert space (consider  $\rho = d^{-1}\mathbb{1}$ ).

**Examples of density matrices** For a single pure qubit:

$$\rho = |\psi\rangle\langle\psi| = \begin{bmatrix} \cos^2(\theta/2) & \cos(\theta/2)\sin(\theta/2)e^{-i\varphi} \\ \cos(\theta/2)\sin(\theta/2)e^{i\varphi} & \sin^2(\theta/2) \end{bmatrix}$$
(3.10.5)

For a generic one-qubit mixed state:

$$\rho = \frac{1}{2}(\mathbb{1} + \vec{r} \cdot \vec{\sigma}) = \frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \mathbb{1} \\ \sigma_x \\ \sigma_y \\ \sigma_z \end{bmatrix} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} 1 + z & x - iy \\ x + iy & 1 - z \end{bmatrix}$$
(3.10.6)

it can be shown by direct computation that in this case  $\text{Tr } \rho^2 = 1/2(1+|r|^2)$ , where  $\vec{r} = (x,y,z)$ : so the state is pure for  $|\vec{r}| = 1$ , and the purity is quadratic in  $|\vec{r}|$ .

We could also look at  $\det \rho = 1/4(1-|r|^2)$  and see that it is zero when  $|\vec{r}| = 1$ , but that method seems less powerful...

**Composite systems** Say we have two Hilbert spaces 1 and 2, with their respective orthonormal bases  $|i\rangle$  and  $|\alpha\rangle$  respectively (let us work with finite-dimensional ones for simplicity).

Say we want to calculate the expectation value of an observable  $A_1$  on 1: we must write it as  $A_T = A \otimes \mathbb{1}_2$ . Of course, our density matrix will also have four indices. Then

$$\langle A \rangle = \text{Tr}\left(\rho A_T\right) = \sum_{k\gamma} \langle k\gamma | \left(\sum_{ij\alpha\beta} \rho_{i\alpha}^{j\beta} \left| i\alpha \right\rangle \! \left\langle j\beta \right| \right) \left(\sum_{mn\sigma\xi} A_m^n \delta_\sigma^{\xi} \left| m\sigma \right\rangle \! \left\langle n\xi \right| \right) \left| k\gamma \right\rangle$$
(3.10.7)

So we can make the sums implicit, the components of A explicit, and simplify some  $\delta s$ :

$$\operatorname{Tr}\left(\rho A_{T}\right) = \delta_{k}^{i} \delta_{\gamma}^{\alpha} \rho_{i\alpha}^{j\beta} \delta_{j}^{m} \delta_{\beta}^{\sigma} A_{m}^{n} \delta_{\sigma}^{\xi} \delta_{n}^{k} \delta_{\xi}^{\gamma} = \rho_{i\alpha}^{j\alpha} A_{j}^{i} \tag{3.10.8}$$

The simplifications are easier to understand by writing the index equivalencies:  $m \equiv j$ ,  $i \equiv k \equiv n$  and  $\alpha \equiv \gamma \equiv \xi \equiv \sigma \equiv \beta$ .

The trace with a simple one-subsystem density matrix, with the same one-subsystem observable *A*, would look like

$$\operatorname{Tr}\left(\rho A\right) = \rho_{i}^{j} A_{j}^{k} \delta_{k}^{i} = \rho_{i}^{j} A_{j}^{i} \tag{3.10.9}$$

So it becomes clear that we can use the traced matrix  $\rho_{i\alpha}^{j\alpha} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\rho_1)_i^j$  as a *reduced density matrix* for the first subsystem.

We can write this in index-free notation as

$$\rho_1 = \operatorname{Tr}_2 \rho \tag{3.10.10}$$

Note that even when  $\rho$  is a pure state, if we trace out a subsystem it can become mixed: this can be seen with  $\rho = 1/2(|00\rangle + |11\rangle)(\langle 00| + \langle 11|)$ , whose  $\rho_1 = 1/2(|0\rangle\langle 0| + |1\rangle\langle 1|)$ .

#### 3.11 Correlations

We want to characterize quantum observables x and y. Let us start by defining the standard deviation:

$$\sigma_{x} = \sqrt{\left\langle \left( x - \left\langle x \right\rangle \right)^{2} \right\rangle} \tag{3.11.1}$$

So, we can define the covariance between two variables:

$$C_{xy} = \frac{\left\langle (x - \langle x \rangle)(y - \langle y \rangle) \right\rangle}{\sigma_x \sigma_y} = \frac{\left\langle xy \right\rangle - \left\langle x \right\rangle \left\langle y \right\rangle}{\sigma_x \sigma_y} \tag{3.11.2}$$

(Unless [x, y] = 0 this is not the same as  $C_{yx}$ !)

## 3.12 Schmidt decomposition

Let us take a generic state in a two-subsystem system:  $|\psi\rangle = \sum_{i,\alpha} c_{i\alpha} |i\rangle_A |\alpha\rangle_B$ . In general, this will be a superposition of dimAdimB states. Schimdt says we can write it as

$$|\psi\rangle = \sum_{i=1}^{k} \sqrt{p_i} |i\rangle_A |\alpha(i)\rangle_B$$
 (3.12.1)

where k is called the *Schmidt rank*, and the  $|\alpha(i)\rangle$  are orthormal. Also,  $p_i \geq 0$  and  $\sum_i p_i = 1$ . How do we get this? We start from our generic state and rewrite it:

$$|\psi\rangle = \sum_{i,\alpha} c_{i\alpha} |i\rangle_A |\alpha\rangle_B \tag{3.12.2a}$$

$$= \sum_{i} |i\rangle \left( \sum_{\alpha} c_{i\alpha} |\alpha\rangle \right) \tag{3.12.2b}$$

$$= \sum_{i} |i\rangle \left| \widetilde{\alpha}(i) \right\rangle \tag{3.12.2c}$$

This seems fine, but the  $|\tilde{\alpha}(i)\rangle$  do not have the properties we want: they are not orthonormal. Let us use equation (3.10.10), with an explicit one-subsystem matrix, and set it equal to the density matrix of (3.12.2c).

$$\sum_{i} p_{i} |i\rangle\langle i| = \operatorname{Tr}_{2} \left( \sum_{i,j} |i\rangle \left| \widetilde{\alpha}(i) \right\rangle \left\langle j \right| \left\langle \widetilde{\alpha}(j) \right| \right)$$
 (3.12.3a)

$$= \sum_{\gamma} \langle \gamma | \left( \sum_{i,j} |i\rangle \left| \widetilde{\alpha}(i) \right\rangle \langle j | \left\langle \widetilde{\alpha}(j) \right| \right) | \gamma \rangle$$
 (3.12.3b)

$$= \sum_{i,j} |i\rangle \langle j| \left( \langle \widetilde{\alpha}(i) | \left( \sum_{\gamma} |\gamma\rangle \langle \gamma| \right) | \widetilde{\alpha}(j) \rangle \right)^*$$
 (3.12.3c)

$$= \sum_{i,j} |i\rangle \langle j| \langle \widetilde{\alpha}(j)|\widetilde{\alpha}(i)\rangle$$
 (3.12.3d)

So, in order for the equality to work it must be that  $\langle \widetilde{\alpha}(j) | \widetilde{\alpha}(i) \rangle = p_i \delta_{ij}$ . So, we can rewrite equation (3.12.2c) with  $|\widetilde{\alpha}(i)\rangle \to |\widetilde{\alpha}(i)\rangle / \sqrt{p_i}$ , which are orthonormal. So, we get

$$|\psi\rangle = \sum_{i} \sqrt{p_i} |i\rangle |\widetilde{\alpha}(i)\rangle$$
 (3.12.4)

and the properties of the  $p_i$  are inherited from the one-subsystem matrix. Note that the Schmidt rank is very susceptible to small perturbations.

**Correletions for separable states** A separable state can be written as  $|\psi\rangle = |i\rangle_A |\alpha\rangle_B$ . If we have an observable on either system, then the correlation will be zero, since the averaging in  $\langle x_A y_B \rangle$  will factor.

**Purification** If we have a generic state  $\rho = \sum_i p_i |i\rangle\langle i|$ , we can add a second subsystem in order to make it into a pure state: let us call the full density matrix  $\sigma = |\psi\rangle\langle\psi|$ , which must equal  $\rho$  if we trace out the second system. The components of  $\sigma$  will look like  $\sigma_{i\alpha}^{j\beta} = c_{i\alpha}c_{j\beta}^*$ , c being the components of  $|\psi\rangle$  in the two-system basis.

$$\rho = \sum_{\gamma} \langle \gamma | \left( \sum_{ij\alpha\beta} \sigma_{i\alpha}^{j\beta} | i\alpha \rangle \langle j\beta | \right) | \gamma \rangle$$
 (3.12.5a)

$$= \sum_{ij\alpha\beta} \sigma_{i\alpha}^{j\beta} |i\rangle \langle j| \langle \beta|\alpha\rangle \tag{3.12.5b}$$

$$\sum_{ij} \rho_{ij} |i\rangle\langle j| = \sum_{ij\alpha\beta} c_{i\alpha} c_{j\beta}^* \delta_{\alpha}^{\beta} |i\rangle\langle j|$$
(3.12.5c)

So the equation to be solved is  $\rho_{ij} = c_{i\alpha}c_{j\alpha}^*$ : these are  $(\dim A)^2$  equations, and we have  $(\dim B)^2$  parameters to tweak: so this can always be done with  $\dim B = \dim A$ .

# 3.13 Kraus representation

How does a subsystem  $\rho_1$  of  $\rho = \rho_1 \otimes |G\rangle\langle G|_2$  evolve? We are using a pure state for subsystem 2 but the construction will be general, since as we saw in 'Purification' on page 63 we can purify states. We know that  $\rho(t) = U\rho U^{\dagger}$ , so:

$$\rho_1(t) = \operatorname{Tr}_2\left(U(\rho_1 \otimes |G\rangle\langle G|_2)U^{\dagger}\right) = \sum_k \langle k|U|G\rangle \,\rho_1 \,\langle G|U^{\dagger}|k\rangle \tag{3.13.1}$$

so we define  $E_k = \langle k | U | G \rangle$ . Note that this is still a matrix, since we only contracted the subsystem 2 indices. These matrices obey  $\sum_k E_k^{\dagger} E_k = 1$ . With this, we get

$$\rho_1(t) = \sum_k E_k \rho_1 E_k^{\dagger} \tag{3.13.2}$$

This defines a superoperator  $S: \rho \to \sum_k E_k \rho E_k^{\dagger}$ .

Because of how it was defined,  ${\cal S}$  has the following properties:

- 1. it preserves self-adjointness;
- 2. it preserves the trace;
- 3. it preserves non-negativity.

The set of the S also has a group structure, and  $S^{-1}$  exists iff S is unitary.

**Kraus representations** Any superoperator with properties 1, 2 and 3 it can be written as

$$S(\rho) = \sum_{k} E_k \rho E_k^{\dagger} \tag{3.13.3}$$

#### 3.14 Generalized measurements

A generalized measurement is defined by a set of operators  $M_i$ , such that  $\sum_i M_i^{\dagger} M_i = 1$ . They represent the possible results of the measurement: the wavefunction is reduced to

$$\frac{M_{i} |\psi\rangle}{\|M_{i}\psi\|} \quad \text{with probability} \quad p_{i} = \|M_{i} |\psi\rangle\|^{2} = \langle \psi | M_{i}^{\dagger} M_{i} |\psi\rangle \quad (3.14.1)$$

Note that the probabilities are normalized:  $\sum_i p_i = 1$ .

If all the  $M_i$  are projectors ( $M_i = M_i^{\dagger} = M_i^2$ ) then we get the usual Von Neumann projective measurements.

**Naimark Theorem** Generalized measurements are equivalent to projective measurements in a larger space: more specifically, a generalized measurement is equivalent to:

- 1. Adding some ancillary qubits;
- 2. evolving the whole system unitarily;
- 3. taking a projective measurement.

**Unitary characterization of Kraus evolution** We have a Kraus evolution  $\rho \to \sum_k E_k \rho E_k^{\dagger}$ , with  $\sum_k E_k^{\dagger} E_k = \mathbb{1}$ .

Let us introduce a subsystem 2, with dimension the number of Kraus operators, and its orthonormal basis  $|k\rangle$ , and the operator

$$U |\psi\rangle_1 |0\rangle_2 \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sum_k E_k |\psi\rangle_1 |k\rangle_2$$
 (3.14.2)

**Claim 3.14.1.** *U* as defined is unitary.

*Proof.* We can show this by proving  $\langle \psi 0 | U^{\dagger} U | \psi 0 \rangle = 1$ . This is then just a calculation:

$$\langle \psi 0 | U^{\dagger} U | \psi 0 \rangle = \sum_{k,k'} \langle \psi |_1 \langle k' |_2 E_{k'} E_k | \psi \rangle_1 | k \rangle_2 = \langle \psi |_1 \left( \sum_k E_k^{\dagger} E_k \right) | \psi \rangle_2 = 1$$
 (3.14.3)

**Claim 3.14.2.** Taking the Kraus evolution of  $\rho_1 = |\psi\rangle\langle\psi|$  is equivalent to evolving  $\rho = |\psi0\rangle\langle\psi0|$  according to U and then tracing out subsystem 2.

*Proof.* The evolution of  $\rho$  is  $\sum_{k,m} E_k |\psi\rangle_1 |k\rangle_2 \langle\psi|_1 \langle m|_2 E_m^{\dagger}$ . Let us take the trace of this wrt subsystem 2: we get

$$\sum_{j} \langle j|_{2} \left( \sum_{k,m} E_{k} |\psi\rangle_{1} |k\rangle_{2} \langle \psi|_{1} \langle m|_{2} E_{m}^{\dagger} \right) |j\rangle_{2} = \sum_{k} E_{k} |\psi\rangle \langle \psi|_{1} E_{k}^{\dagger} = \sum_{k} E_{k} \rho_{1} E_{k}^{\dagger}$$
(3.14.4)

**Claim 3.14.3.** Evolving  $|\psi\rangle|0\rangle$  according to U and then taking a projective measurement is equivalent to a generalized measurement on subsystem 1.

*Proof.* We take the measurement  $P = \mathbb{1}_1 \otimes |i\rangle\langle i|_2$ .

$$\operatorname{Tr}_{12}(\rho P_i) = \sum_{jq} \langle j|_1 \langle q|_2 \left( \sum_{k,m} E_k |\psi\rangle_1 |k\rangle_2 \langle \psi|_1 \langle m|_2 E_m^{\dagger} \right) \left( \mathbb{1}_1 \otimes |i\rangle\langle i|_2 \right) |j\rangle_1 |q\rangle_2 \tag{3.14.5a}$$

$$= \sum_{i} \langle j|_{1} \left( E_{i} |\psi\rangle \langle \psi|_{1} E_{i}^{\dagger} \right) |j\rangle_{1}$$
 (3.14.5b)

$$= \operatorname{Tr}_{1} \left( \left| \psi \right\rangle \! \left\langle \psi \right| E_{i}^{\dagger} E_{i} \right) \tag{3.14.5c}$$

**Weak measurements** We wish to measure a system without disturbing it too much: let us consider a System-Environment couple of qubits, in the initial state  $|\psi\rangle = (\alpha |0\rangle + \beta |1\rangle)_S \otimes |0\rangle_E = \alpha |00\rangle + \beta |10\rangle$ . We apply the gate

$$U = (R_z(-\theta)_S \otimes \mathbb{1}_E) \left(\cos(\theta)\mathbb{1}_{SE} - i\sin(\theta)C_S \text{NOT}_E\right) = \begin{bmatrix} e^{-i\theta} & & & \\ & e^{-i\theta} & & \\ & & e^{-i\theta}\cos\theta & -ie^{-i\theta}\sin\theta \\ & & -ie^{-i\theta}\sin\theta & e^{-i\theta}\cos\theta \end{bmatrix}$$
(3.14.6)

The global phase can be removed. The phases on the bottom square of the matrix come from the rotation, while the ones on the top come from Euler's identity applied to the CNOT. ( $\theta$  is small). The result of the application of this gate to  $|\psi\rangle$  is

$$U|\psi\rangle = \alpha |00\rangle + \beta(\cos(\theta)|10\rangle - i\sin(\theta)|11\rangle)$$
(3.14.7)

Now, we measure the environment: we will most likely (with probability  $\sim 1-\left|\beta\right|^2\theta^2$ ) get 0: in this case the system is reduced to

$$\frac{\alpha |00\rangle + \beta \cos(\theta) |10\rangle}{\sqrt{|\alpha|^2 + |\beta \cos(\theta)|^2}}$$
(3.14.8)

which approaches  $|\psi\rangle$  as  $\theta\to 0$ . If, instead, we get 1, the state becomes  $|11\rangle$ .

This does not seem very useful, as it can only provide us with some statistical bounds on the size of  $\beta$  if we measure a few times, but we must not do it too often...

#### 3.14.1 **POVMs**

We get some set of positive operators  $F_i$  such that  $\sum_i F_i = \mathbb{1}$ , and use these as the possible results of our measurement, which we will get with probabilities  $p_i = \langle \psi | F_i | \psi \rangle$ , or more generally  $p_i = \text{Tr}(\rho F_i)$ .

They are useful in describing destructive measurements, like a photodetector. It is interesting when  $p_i = 0$  with some  $\psi$ , because if we see that detector go off we know the system was *not* in  $\psi$ .

#### 3.15 Quantum channels

An example of decoherence by interaction If our first system starts in  $|\psi\rangle = \alpha |0\rangle + \beta |1\rangle$ , so

$$\rho = \begin{bmatrix} |\alpha|^2 & \alpha \beta^* \\ \alpha^* \beta & |\beta|^2 \end{bmatrix}$$
 (3.15.1)

Now, let us consider a second subsystem, so the state becomes  $\alpha |00\rangle + \beta |10\rangle$ , then we apply a CNOT gate controlling on our first subsystem: the state becomes  $\alpha |00\rangle + \beta |11\rangle$ . If we trace the second subsystem out, the density matrix becomes

$$\rho' = \begin{bmatrix} |\alpha|^2 & 0\\ 0 & |\beta|^2 \end{bmatrix} \tag{3.15.2}$$

**Linear transformations in Bloch space** We take a Kraus transformation of a density matrix as given in equation (3.13.3), and represent it as in equation (3.10.6):  $\rho = 1/2(\mathbb{1} + \vec{r} \cdot \vec{\sigma})$  (and in the same fashion  $\rho'$  with r').

**Claim 3.15.1.** This Kraus transformation corresponds to a linear map  $r_i \to M_i^j r_j + c_i$  which is a contraction.

*Proof.* We can expand the Kraus matrices as  $E_k = \gamma_k \mathbb{1} + \sum_i a_{ik} \sigma_i$ : our full expression becomes

$$\rho \to \rho' = \sum_{k} \left( \gamma_{k} \mathbb{1} + \sum_{i} a_{ik} \sigma_{i} \right) \frac{1}{2} (\mathbb{1} + \vec{r} \cdot \vec{\sigma}) \left( \gamma_{k}^{*} \mathbb{1} + \sum_{j} a_{jk}^{*} \sigma_{j}^{\dagger} \right)$$
(3.15.3)

and our claim is that

$$\rho' = \frac{1}{2} \left( \mathbb{1} + \left( M_i^j r_j + c_i \right) \sigma_i \right) \tag{3.15.4}$$

for some matrix  $M_i^j$  and vector  $c_i$ . This can be readily seen by noticing that:

- 1. products of Pauli matrices are linear combinations of Pauli matrices:  $\sigma_a \sigma_b = \delta_{ab} \mathbb{1} + i \varepsilon_{abc} \sigma_c$ ;
- 2. the Kraus transformation sends density matrices into density matrices, so the trace of  $\rho'$  will still be 1 and we will be able to separate the trace term 1/2 from the traceless Pauli matrix part (that is, there will not be any transformation-dependents coefficients multiplying the identity).

Now, to see that it is a contraction recall that  ${\rm Tr}\, \rho^2 \leq 1$ . We will apply the formula:

$$(\vec{a} \cdot \vec{\sigma})(\vec{b} \cdot \vec{\sigma}) = (\vec{a} \cdot \vec{b})\mathbb{1} + i(\vec{a} \wedge \vec{b}) \cdot \vec{\sigma}) \tag{3.15.5}$$

So then:

$$Tr(\rho')^{2} = Tr\left(\frac{1}{4}\left(\mathbb{1} + \vec{r'} \cdot \vec{\sigma}\right)^{2}\right) = Tr\left(\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1 + |r'|^{2}}{2}\mathbb{1} + \vec{r'} \cdot \vec{\sigma}\right)\right)$$
(3.15.6)

therefore  $|r'| \le 1$ : the image of the unit sphere is contained in the unit sphere.

We can write explicit equations for *M* and *c*:

$$M_{jk} = \sum_{l} \left( 2 \operatorname{Re} \left( a_{lj} a_{lk}^* \right) + \delta_{jk} \left( |\gamma_l|^2 - \sum_{p} \left| a_{lp} \right|^2 \right) + 2 \sum_{p} \varepsilon_{jkp} \operatorname{Im} \left( \gamma_l^* a_{lp} \right) \right)$$

$$c_j = 2i \sum_{klm} \varepsilon_{jlm} a_{kl} a_{km}^*$$
(3.15.7b)

It seems like it should be true that  $|\det M| = 1$  (and  $\vec{c} = 0$ ) iff there is only one  $E_k$ , that is, the channel is actually a unitary transformation.

#### \*-flip channel

$$S(\rho) = |\alpha|^2 \sigma_i \rho \sigma_i^{\dagger} + \left(1 - |\alpha|^2\right) \rho$$
So  $E_0 = \alpha \sigma_i$  and  $E_1 = \sqrt{1 - |\alpha|^2} \mathbb{1}$ . (3.15.8)

1. i = x: bitflip

2. i = z: phaseflip

3. i = y: bitphaseflip

In the Bloch sphere, it keeps the dimension i still and shrinks along the other two by a factor  $1 - 2|\alpha|^2$ . For example, the bitflip gate approaches  $\sigma_x$  as  $|\alpha|^2 \to 1$ .

This circuit can be represented as unitary evolution: we add a subsystem with a wavefunction  $|\psi\rangle = \alpha |1\rangle + \sqrt{1-|\alpha|^2} |0\rangle$ , and perform a control- $\sigma_i$  (where the new subsystem is the controller).

In the expression of  $\psi$  the 0 and 1 are swapped, right?

**Depolarizing channel** It mixes states: the fixed point is r = 0.

$$S(\rho) = \frac{P}{3} \left( \sum_{i} \sigma_{i} \rho \sigma_{i}^{\dagger} \right) + (1 - P)\rho$$
 (3.15.9)

$$r \to r \left( 1 - \frac{4P}{3} \right) \tag{3.15.10}$$

Amplitude damping channel Its Kraus matrices are

$$E_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & \sqrt{1-P} \end{bmatrix} \qquad E_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \sqrt{P} \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \tag{3.15.11}$$

It moves the population towards  $|0\rangle\langle 0|$ : it maps  $|1\rangle\langle 1| \to P |0\rangle\langle 0| + (1-P) |1\rangle\langle 1|$ .

The fixed point is a pure state, so this channel can increase the purity of a state; however, it is fundamentally an incoherent process.

In the Bloch sphere, the amplitude damping channel looks like:

$$r \to \begin{bmatrix} \sqrt{1-P} & & \\ & \sqrt{1-P} & \\ & & 1-P \end{bmatrix} r + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ P \end{bmatrix}$$
 (3.15.12)

So, for example,  $r = -\hat{z} \to (2P-1)\hat{z}$ . This transformation has only  $(0,0,1)^{\top}$  as its fixed point.

**Phase damping channel** It models what we might see if our particle was in a variable magnetic field: the phase of the particle is rotated by varying similar continuously distributed angles. We can write the phase gate as  $R_z(\theta) = \text{diag}\left(e^{-i\theta/2}, e^{i\theta/2}\right)$ . We assume the phase angles are normally distributed with variance  $\lambda$ :

$$p(\theta) = \frac{\exp\left(\frac{-\theta^2}{2\lambda}\right)}{\sqrt{\pi\lambda}} \tag{3.15.13}$$

then the channel looks like

$$\rho \to \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} R_z(\theta) \rho R_z(-\theta) p(\theta) \, d\theta \tag{3.15.14}$$

Now let us take a generic density matrix:

$$\rho = \begin{bmatrix} P & \alpha \\ \alpha^* & 1 - P \end{bmatrix} \to \int d\theta \, p(\theta) \begin{bmatrix} P & \alpha e^{-i\theta} \\ \alpha^* e^{i\theta} & 1 - P \end{bmatrix}$$
(3.15.15)

and by putting together  $p(\theta)e^{\pm i\theta}$  we can complete the square to get a Gaussian integral (which equals one since the pdf is already normalized) times  $e^{-\lambda}$ . So

$$\rho' = \begin{bmatrix} P & \alpha e^{-\lambda} \\ \alpha^* e^{-\lambda} & 1 - P \end{bmatrix}$$
 (3.15.16)

This can be also be interpreted as repeated application of the channel with the Kraus matrices

$$E_0 = \sqrt{1 - P} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \qquad E_2 = \sqrt{P} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \qquad E_2 = \sqrt{P} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$
(3.15.17)

which send

$$\rho \to \begin{bmatrix} \rho_{00} & \rho_{01}(1-P) \\ \rho_{10}(1-P) & \rho_{11} \end{bmatrix}$$
 (3.15.18)

and if  $P = \lambda \delta t$  for small  $\delta t$  and the interactions are very fast then  $\rho'_{01} \to (1 - \lambda \delta t)^{t/\delta t} \sim e^{-\lambda t}$ .

**Entanglement damping channel** Let us consider a nice entangled couple of qubits, with  $|\psi\rangle=1/\sqrt{2}(|01\rangle+|10\rangle)$ . How can we break it? We will use the Kraus operators  $E_{1,2}=\mathbb{1}\otimes \mathrm{diag}\big(1,\cos(\theta)\big)$  or  $\mathbb{1}\otimes \mathrm{diag}\big(1,\sin(\theta)\big)$ .

Then, the density matrix becomes:

$$\frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \rightarrow \frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \cos(\theta) \\ \cos(\theta) & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$
 (3.15.19)

If we trace out one subsystem, we get  $\rho_i = 1/2\mathbb{I}$ , before and after the transformation.

## 3.16 Master equation

We want to describe the time evolution of a system with Kraus matrices:

$$\rho(t) = \mathcal{S}(t, t_0) [\rho] = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} E_k \rho E_k^{\dagger}$$
(3.16.1)

with  $N \leq (\dim \mathcal{H})^2$ . It must have the following properties:

- 1. S(t,t) = 1;
- 2. It should become the conventional unitary evolution if N = 1;
- 3. at any time, we must have  $\sum_k E_k^{\dagger} E_k = 1$ .

How will these matrices look? We would like to assume  $E_0 = \mathbb{1} + H/i\hbar \,dt$ , but this will not work: let us add a term  $K \,dt$ , with a self-adjoint K.

The other  $E_k$  will then be  $L_k \sqrt{dt}$  to first order.

Expanding condition 3 to first order gives:

$$\left( \left( \mathbb{1} + \left( \frac{H}{i\hbar} + \frac{K}{\hbar} \right) dt \right) \left( \mathbb{1} + \left( -\frac{H}{i\hbar} + \frac{K}{\hbar} \right) dt \right) + \sum_{k} L_{k}^{\dagger} L_{k} \right) dt \stackrel{!}{=} \mathbb{1} dt \tag{3.16.2}$$

So, we must have  $K = -\hbar/2 \sum_k L_k^{\dagger} L_k$  (indeed self-adjoint). How will our density matrix evolve after dt then? We will assume  $S(t + dt, t)[\rho] = \rho + \dot{\rho} dt + O(dt^2)$ .

$$\dot{\rho} = \frac{[H,\rho]}{i\hbar} + \frac{\{K,\rho\}}{\hbar} + \sum_{k} L_{k}\rho L_{k}^{\dagger}$$
(3.16.3)

We can plug in our formula for K and compact the sums into one, to get the

#### Gorini-Kossakowski-Sudarshan-Lindblad equation

$$\dot{\rho} = \frac{[H, \rho]}{i\hbar} + \sum_{k} \left( L_k \rho L_k^{\dagger} - \frac{1}{2} \left\{ L_k^{\dagger} L_k, \rho \right\} \right) \tag{3.16.4}$$

This works if the system has no memory. If, instead, the evolution depends not only on the present state but on events further past, we must use the

**Markovian version** The form we show here is the diagonal one. We have the restriction that the  $L_k$  must be traceless.

$$\dot{\rho} = \frac{[H, \rho]}{i\hbar} + \sum_{k} \gamma_k \left( L_k \rho L_k^{\dagger} - \frac{1}{2} \left\{ L_k^{\dagger} L_k, \rho \right\} \right) \tag{3.16.5}$$

## 3.17 One-key cryptography

The simplest paradigm: we have a key k, decryption and encryption algorithms D and E: if P is the clear-text message and C is the encrypted one then  $E_k(P) = C$  and  $D_k(C) = P$ .

Even a very simple algorithm is secure if the key is longer than the message, private and only used once: for example, if we have n letters in our alphabet, we can do  $E_k P_i = (P_i - k_i)$  mod n and  $E_k C_i = (C_i + k_i) \mod n$ .

We can distribute the keys with *Quantum Key Distribution*: there are different algorythms to do it, a modern one we will not treat uses entanglement and is called E91 since Eckert invented it. We will look at Bennet & Brassard.

**Quantum Key Distribution: BB84** Alice wants to send Bob a secure string of ones and zeroes.

She selects two bases, say  $B_z = \{|0\rangle, |1\rangle\}$  and  $B_x = \{H|0\rangle, H|1\rangle\}$  (where we use the Hadamard gate, see 'Hadamard' on page 49).

At random, she chooses a basis with which to send each qubit, and keeps a record of the bases she used.

Bob receives the qubits and also measures them in a basis chosen between  $B_z$  and  $B_x$ , and keeps a record of the bases he used.

After the communication is finished, they exchange in clear text the list of the bases they used, and discard the bits where they used a different basis.

Now they have a secure shared list of bits: if Eve were to try to measure the qubits in the middle, around half the time she'd collapse the state into the wrong basis. So, Alice and Bob just need to check a portion of the bits they *should* share, and if they don't match then something is wrong: either there is too much noise, or somebody's listening in. Either way, they discard the whole key and try again.

#### **Correction methods**

- 1. First of all, we check on a part of our message the error rate R: if R/N is large ( $\sim 1/2$ ) then we discard everything.
- 2. Now that we know R, we can choose some length  $\ell$  such that  $R\ell/N$  is still small: then, we do a parity check on every  $\ell$  long block.
- 3. If we somehow know that Eve knows k bits of our message, we can still generate a key she will not be able to know: if we split our message into n k s snippets for some s, she will be able to gather only  $O(2^{-s})$  bits of information: after splitting the message, our *new* message is something like the parity of each snippet.

**Attack methods** Eve cannot intercept the qubits and resend them, that's the point. There are some things she could do, though:

- 1. **translucent attack**: Eve operates unitarily on the passing qubits, entangling them with some qubits she keeps, and which she measures only *after* Alice and Bob have communicated which basis they used.
  - Surely she cannot completely *clone* the passing qubit, but she might do some sneaky low-interference stuff.
- 2. **collective attacks** on several qubits at once.

# 3.18 Dense coding

Bob and Alice prepare two qubits together, in  $|\psi\rangle = \text{CNOT}(H \otimes \mathbb{1}) |00\rangle = 1/\sqrt{2}(|00\rangle + |11\rangle)$ . Now Alice takes a qubit with her, and Bob keeps the other.

Now they are far apart. Alice wants to send two classical bits xy. She chooses based on her two bits an operator between  $U_i = \{1, \sigma_x, \sigma_z, \sigma_y\}$  and applies it to her qubit.

The state becomes one of these:

$$U_0 |\psi\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|00\rangle + |11\rangle)$$
 (3.18.1a)

$$U_1 |\psi\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|10\rangle + |01\rangle)$$
 (3.18.1b)

$$U_2 |\psi\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|00\rangle - |11\rangle)$$
 (3.18.1c)

$$U_3 |\psi\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|10\rangle - |01\rangle)$$
 (3.18.1d)

Now she sends her qubit to Bob, who still has his.

Bob applies  $(CNOT(H \otimes 1))^{-1} = (H \otimes 1)CNOT$  to the qubits.

$$\left(\text{CNOT}(H \otimes \mathbb{1})\right)^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$
(3.18.2)

Now, as can be seen by summing the combinations of rows of the matrix in (3.18.2) corresponding to the states  $U_i | \psi \rangle$ , Bob's qubits will be in the state  $| xy \rangle$ .

In the end, the protocol can be written as:

$$(H \otimes 1) \text{CNOT}(U_i \otimes 1) \text{CNOT}(H \otimes 1) |00\rangle = |i\rangle$$
(3.18.3)

If we tried to do this with a mixed state, the application of 1 and  $\sigma_z$  would give the same result  $(1/2(|00\rangle\langle00|+|11\rangle\langle11|))$  as would  $\sigma_x$  and  $\sigma_y$   $(1/2(|01\rangle\langle01|+|10\rangle\langle10|))$ . So, since there would be only two distinguishable states, only 1 bit would be transmitted.

# 3.19 Bell Inequalities

Alice and Bob have some (entangled) state on their hands, and are separated by a space-like interval. Alice makes a measurement x and gets outcome a, Bob makes a measurement y and gets outcome b.

They repeat this several times, always with the same starting state. This whole experiment is then characterized by the function  $\mathbb{P}(ab|xy)$ . In general we will have correlations, so  $\mathbb{P}(ab|xy) \neq \mathbb{P}(a|x)\mathbb{P}(b|y)$ . If our theory is local, however, these cannot be explained by the transmission of information from Alice to Bob. Can we describe them by some local unknown (*hidden*) variable which determines the measurement *a priori*?

**Claim 3.19.1.** The results of a Bell experiment which are predicted by quantum mechanics cannot be described by a hidden variable  $\lambda$  distributed according to some function  $q(\lambda)$ , with an expression in the form:

$$\mathbb{P}(ab|xy) = \int q(\lambda)\mathbb{P}(a|x;\lambda)\mathbb{P}(b|y;\lambda) \,d\lambda \tag{3.19.1}$$

*Proof.* We prove the statement by contradiction. How do we calculate a correlation under our hypothesis? To simplify, we assume  $a, b \in \{+1, -1\}$  and  $x, y \in \{0, 1\}$ . I will use the (improper) notation  $dq = d\lambda q(\lambda)$ 

$$\langle ab \rangle_{xy} = \sum_{ab} ab \mathbb{P}(ab|xy) = \int dq \left( \sum_{a} a \mathbb{P}(a|x;\lambda) \right) \left( \sum_{b} b \mathbb{P}(b|y;\lambda) \right)$$
 (3.19.2)

Therefore,  $\langle ab \rangle_{xy} = \int \mathrm{d}q \, \langle a \rangle_{x,\lambda} \, \langle b \rangle_{y,\lambda}$ . Subscripts, here, mean conditioning.

**Hidden variable inequality (CHSH)** Now, we consider the following quantity:

$$S = \langle ab \rangle_{00} + \langle ab \rangle_{01} + \langle ab \rangle_{10} - \langle ab \rangle_{11} \tag{3.19.3}$$

The minus sign is arbitrarily placed, it just matters that there is just one negative and three positive terms. We can show that  $S \le 2$ : surely

$$S \leq \int dq \left[ \left| \langle b \rangle_{0,\lambda} + \langle b \rangle_{1,\lambda} \right| \sup \langle a \rangle_{0,\lambda} + \left| \langle b \rangle_{0,\lambda} - \langle b \rangle_{1,\lambda} \right| \sup \langle a \rangle_{1,\lambda} \right]$$
(3.19.4)

and, since the outcomes are  $\pm 1$ , for any  $\lambda$ :  $\langle a \rangle_{x,\lambda} \leq 1$  and  $\langle b \rangle_{y,\lambda} \leq 1$ , so

$$S \le \int dq \left[ \left| \langle b \rangle_{0,\lambda} + \langle b \rangle_{1,\lambda} \right| + \left| \langle b \rangle_{0,\lambda} - \langle b \rangle_{1,\lambda} \right| \right]$$
 (3.19.5)

WLOG we can assume  $\langle b \rangle_{0,\lambda} \geq \langle b \rangle_{1,\lambda} \geq 0$ . Therefore the integrand is bounded by  $\langle b \rangle_{0,\lambda} + \langle b \rangle_{1,\lambda} + \langle b \rangle_{0,\lambda} - \langle b \rangle_{1,\lambda} = 2 \langle b \rangle_{0,\lambda} \leq 2$ .

The probability density of  $\lambda$  must be normalized:  $\int dq = 1$ . So, the integrand is an upper bound for the integral, and we get  $S \le 2$ .

(This can be generalized to  $|S| \le 2$ ).

**Quantum CHSH violation** We use as our observables the spin in different directions: if we have a vector  $\vec{a}$ , then  $\hat{O}_a = \vec{a} \cdot \vec{\sigma}$ . As our state we take the antisymmetric spin singlet,  $|\psi\rangle = 1/\sqrt{2}(|01\rangle - |10\rangle)$ . We want to show that the correlation expectation value  $\langle O_a \otimes O_b \rangle_{\psi}$  is equal to  $-a \cdot b$ . We only need to compute the central four elements of the 4x4 matrix  $O_a \otimes O_b$ , which correspond to the 01 and 10 basis elements.

$$[O_a \otimes O_b]_{\text{reduced}} = \begin{bmatrix} -a_z b_z & (a_x + ia_y)(b_x - ib_y) \\ (a_x - ia_y)(b_x + ib_y) & -a_z b_z \end{bmatrix}$$
(3.19.6)

We compute the expectation value of the matrix in (3.19.6):

$$\langle O_a \otimes O_b \rangle_{\psi} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} -a_z b_z & (a_x + i a_y)(b_x - i b_y) \\ (a_x - i a_y)(b_x + i b_y) & -a_z b_z \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$$
(3.19.7a)

$$= \frac{1}{2} \left( -a_z b_z - (a_x + i a_y)(b_x - i b_y) - (a_x - i a_y)(b_x + i b_y) + (-a_z b_z) \right)$$
 (3.19.7b)

$$= -\vec{a} \cdot \vec{b} \tag{3.19.7c}$$

Now: we pick as our measurement with possible outcomes 0, 1 two *pairs* of directions, and we call the result 0 if the spin is measured along the first, 1 if it measured along the second.

- 1. For  $\vec{a}$ , we call the result 0 if the spin direction is  $\vec{a}_0 = \hat{x}$  and 1 if the spin direction is  $\vec{a}_1 = \hat{y}$ ;
- 2. for  $\vec{b}$ , we call the result 0 if the spin direction is  $\vec{b}_0 = -(\hat{x} + \hat{y})/\sqrt{2}$  and 1 if the spin direction is  $\vec{b}_1 = -(\hat{x} + \hat{y})/\sqrt{2}$

So, we can compute S using equation (3.19.7c):

$$S = \langle ab \rangle_{00} + \langle ab \rangle_{01} + \langle ab \rangle_{10} - \langle ab \rangle_{11} = \frac{4}{\sqrt{2}} = 2\sqrt{2} > 2$$
 (3.19.8)

## 3.20 Nonlocal correlations

We want to define *probability spaces*. We will use the notation of section Bell Inequalities. If a, b can have  $\Delta \in \mathbb{N}$  values, and there are  $m \in \mathbb{N}$  possible measurements (x, y) we can make. Then, our correlations are a point  $\mathbb{P}(ab|xy)$  in some subset  $\mathcal{P}$  of  $\mathbb{R}^{m^2\Delta^2}$ , bounded by:

- 1.  $\forall x, y, a, b : \mathbb{P}(ab|xy) \geq 0$ ;
- 2.  $\forall x, y$ :

$$\sum_{a=1}^{\Delta} \sum_{b=1}^{\Delta} \mathbb{P}(ab|xy) = 1 \tag{3.20.1}$$

Now, we define some subsets of this space.

**No-Signaling** The set is called NS. We impose a condition which means: *no matter what we do with a measurement, it will not affect the other*:  $\forall x, x', y, y', a$ 

$$\sum_{b=1}^{\Delta} \mathbb{P}(ab|xy) = \sum_{b=1}^{\Delta} \mathbb{P}(ab|xy') \qquad \qquad \sum_{a=1}^{\Delta} \mathbb{P}(ab|xy) = \sum_{a=1}^{\Delta} \mathbb{P}(ab|x'y)$$
(3.20.2)

this implies  $\mathbb{P}(a|x) = \mathbb{P}(a|xy) = \sum_b \mathbb{P}(ab|xy)$ .

In the  $\Delta=2$  case,  $a,b=\pm1$  the No-Signaling conditions become

$$\mathbb{P}(ab|xy) = \frac{1 + a\langle A_x \rangle + b\langle B_y \rangle + ab\langle A_x B_y \rangle}{4} \ge 0 \tag{3.20.3}$$

so if A and B have zero average,  $1 \pm \left\langle A_x B_y \right\rangle \ge 0$ . What?

**Local correlations** The set is called L. It is the set of correlations that can be written as in equation (3.19.1).

### **Quantum correlations** The set is called *Q*.

If we have some operators  $M_{a|x}$  and  $M_{b|y}$  in their respective Hilbert spaces, such that for each conditioning they still form a POVM (see 'POVMs' on page 65), then Q is the set of the probabilities which can be expressed as

$$\mathbb{P}(ab|xy) = \text{Tr}(\rho_{AB}M_{a|x} \otimes M_{b|y}) \tag{3.20.4}$$

This is in the context of nonprojective measurements, but as we saw in 'Purification' on page 63 states can be purified so that everything we do is unitary. In that context,

$$\mathbb{P}(ab|xy) = \langle \psi | A_x \otimes B_y | \psi \rangle \tag{3.20.5}$$

with some self-adjoint families of operators  $A_x$  and  $B_y$ .

It can be useful to have  $A_xB_y$ , a product of commuting observables  $[A_x, B_y] = 0$  on the same space, instead of  $A_x \otimes B_y$ ; these descriptions are surely equivalent in the finite-dimensional case, maybe the latter is more general in the infinite-dimensional one.

**Shapes and inclusions** Every one of these sets is of the same dimension, and it can be shown that NS, L are polytopes while Q's boundary is curved. Also,  $L \subset Q \subset NS \subset \mathcal{P}$ .

They are all bounded, convex, closed. The planes which separate them are in general called Bell Inequalities.

The  $\Delta=2$ , m=2 case We can have different linearly independent Ss, (S being the one defined in (3.19.3)). In 2D (a projection?) we have: L is a square ( $|S_x| \le 2$ ,  $|S_y| \le 2$ ), Q is a circle ( $|S|^2 \le 8$ ), NS is a square ( $|S'_{x,y}| \le 4$ , with  $S'_{x,y} = HS_{x,y}$  (H is the Hadamard gate)).

# 3.21 Entropy

A message is a sequence of characters from an alphabet. If the alphabet is  $A = \{a_i\}_i$  and each of the characters in the alphabet appears with probability  $p_i$ , we can define A's *entropy* as

$$H = -\sum_{i} p_i \log(p_i) \tag{3.21.1}$$

with the convention  $0 \log 0 = 0$ 

**Noiseless coding: Shannon's theorem** Given a k-long message, asyntotycally as  $k \to \infty$  there exists an encoding with which we can express each character of the message with H bits on average, or the whole message with kH bits.

If we take any encoding, it can only do as good as Shannon encoding, and no better (at least not *in general*).

**Von Neumann entropy** We can define the entropy of a mixed state  $\rho$  as

$$S_V = -\operatorname{Tr}\left(\rho \log \rho\right) \tag{3.21.2}$$

1. For pure states we have  $S_V(|\psi\rangle\langle\psi|) = 0$ ;

- 2.  $S_V$  is invariant wrt unitary transformations;
- 3.  $0 \le S_V \le \dim \mathcal{H}^{1}$ .

**Quantum Noiseless coding: Schumacher's theorem** If our alphabet is now made of pure states, the probability distribution of a message will be some hyper-density matrix,  $\rho^{\otimes N}$ .

Schumacher says: in the limit of infinite message length, we can always compress it with  $S_V$  bits per letter.

# 3.22 Entanglement measurements

We want a measurement  $E(\rho)$  which satisfies:

- 1. If  $\rho$  is separable, then  $E(\rho) = 0$ ;
- 2.  $E(\rho) = E(U\rho U^{\dagger});$
- 3. If we have a set of operators  $A_i \otimes B_i$ , to each of which we associate a probability  $p_i = \text{Tr}\left((A_i \otimes B_i)\rho(A_i \otimes B_i)^{\dagger}\right)$ , and which can project the state into the normalized application of the Kraus operators  $\sigma_i = (A_i \otimes B_i)\rho(A_i \otimes B_i)^{\dagger}/p_i$ , then

$$E(\rho) \ge \sum_{i} p_i E(\sigma_i) \tag{3.22.1}$$

This means: the entanglement is invariant under local Kraus evolution: the systems cannot become *more* entangled when evolving on their own.

#### NOT CLEAR HOW

4. If  $\rho = \rho_A$  is a pure state then  $E(\rho) = S_V(\rho_A)$ .

### **Entanglement of formation** We can define

$$E_F(\rho) = \min \sum_i p_i S_V(\rho_A^i)$$
(3.22.2)

where the minimum is to be taken over all the possible decompositions  $\rho = \sum_i p_i |\psi_i\rangle\langle\psi_i|$  and  $\rho_A^i = \text{Tr}_B(|\psi_j\rangle\langle\psi_j|)$ : so, we pick a decomposition, we trace out the second system and take the entropy.

**Concurrence** This only applies to two-qubit systems.

$$C(\rho) = \max(0, \lambda_1 - \lambda_2 - \lambda_3 - \lambda_4)$$
(3.22.3)

Where the  $\lambda_i$  are eigenvalues of  $\left(\rho\sigma_y^{\otimes 2}\right)^2$ , taken in decreasing order.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>Since  $\prod_{i=1}^{N} p_i^{-p_i} \leq N$ .

# 3.23 Quantum algorithms

## 3.23.1 Oracle interrogation

We have an oracle function  $f(x) : \{0,1\}^n \to \{0,1\}$  which is either *constant* (always gives the same result) or *balanced* (gives 0 for half of its inputs, and 1 for the other half).

With a classical computer, we'd need  $\max(\lfloor n/2 \rfloor, 2)$  calls to the oracle in the worst case to be sure that it is one and not the other. With a quantum computer, we can do it in just one call.

Take n = 1 for simplicity.

Our unitary representation of an oracle must be invertible, so we take the input along:

$$U_f |x\rangle |y\rangle \rightarrow |x\rangle |f(x) \oplus y\rangle$$
 (3.23.1)

where  $\oplus$  is the XOR binary gate. y is generic, it could be set to zero but we want a general gate. The algorithm is

- 1. Start with  $|xy\rangle = |01\rangle$ ;
- 2. apply  $H \otimes H$ ;
- 3. apply  $U_f$ ;
- 4. apply  $H \otimes \mathbb{1}$ ;
- 5. measure the first qubit.

First of all:  $(H \otimes H) |01\rangle = (|0\rangle + |1\rangle)(|0\rangle - |1\rangle)/2$ . Now:

$$U_f|x\rangle \otimes \left(\frac{|0\rangle - |1\rangle}{\sqrt{2}}\right) = (-)^{f(x)}|x\rangle \otimes \left(\frac{|0\rangle - |1\rangle}{\sqrt{2}}\right)$$
 (3.23.2)

So after the application of the oracle gate, the first qubit's state has become

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left( (-)^{f(0)} |0\rangle + (-)^{f(1)} |1\rangle \right) \tag{3.23.3}$$

and if we apply a Hadamard to it, it becomes

$$\frac{1}{2} \left( \left( (-)^{f(0)} + (-)^{f(1)} \right) |0\rangle \left( (-)^{f(0)} - (-)^{f(1)} \right) |1\rangle \right) \tag{3.23.4}$$

therefore the state is  $surely \ \left| \psi \right> = \left[ f(0) = f(1) \right] \left| 0 \right> + \left[ f(0) \neq f(1) \right] \left| 1 \right>.$ 

*n***-qubit case** We do the same thing as before, only with *n* qubits:  $|x\rangle = |0\rangle^{\otimes n}$  at the start, so after the Hadamards we get

$$H^{\otimes(n+1)}|x\rangle|y\rangle = \frac{1}{2^{(n+1)/2}} \sum_{x=0}^{2^{n}-1} |x\rangle_{1} (|0\rangle - |1\rangle)_{2}$$
 (3.23.5)

so after applying the oracle and another Hadamard we get

$$H\left(\frac{1}{2^{n/2}}\sum_{x=0}^{2^{n}-1}(-)^{f(x)}|x\rangle\right)$$
(3.23.6)

on the first qubit. Now, either f(x) is constant or it is balanced: if it is constant then this is just  $|0\rangle$ . If it is not, then it is orthogonal (since at least one of the bits must be different): so we can just check whether the system is in  $|0\rangle$ .

#### **3.23.2** Grover

The classical complexity for a search in an unstructured database is O(N), with Grover's algorithm we get  $O(N^{1/2})$ .

The problem looks similar to the oracle: now our  $f(x) = [x = \overline{x}]$  and we seek  $\overline{x}$ . We explain the procedure with n = 2:

- 1. Start with  $|xy\rangle = |\vec{0}1\rangle$ ;
- 2. apply  $H^{\otimes (n+1)}$ ;
- 3. apply  $U_f$ ;
- 4. apply  $D \otimes 1$ ;
- 5. measure the  $|x\rangle$  state.

as before, after applying step 3 we get

$$|\psi\rangle_1 = \frac{1}{2^{n/2}} \sum_{x=0}^{2^n - 1} (-)^{f(x)} |x\rangle = \frac{1}{2^{n/2}} \left( \sum_{x=0}^{2^n - 1} |x\rangle \right) - 2 |\overline{x}\rangle$$
 (3.23.7)

Now, D is 1/2 of the matrix with -1 on the diagonal, and 1 in every other entry. Its eigenvectors are exactly the possible  $|x\rangle$  after the oracle, so after the application of D we get exactly  $|\overline{x}\rangle$ .

This D can be made with the usual gates as  $H^{\otimes 2}\sigma_x^{\otimes 2}(\mathbb{1}\otimes H)\mathsf{CNOT}(\mathbb{1}\otimes H)\sigma_x^{\otimes 2}H^{\otimes 2}$ . Below is the Python code to verify that it works.

We will also need the matrix D', which is such that  $D = H^{\otimes 2}D'H^{\otimes 2}$ . It turns out that  $D' = \eta_{uv}$  for a Minkowski flat spacetime.

```
import numpy as np
H = 1/np.sqrt(2)* np.array([[1,1], [1,-1]])
H2 = np.kron(H, H)
sigma_x = np.array([[0,1], [1,0]])
sigma_x2 = np.kron(sigma_x, sigma_x)
CNOT = np.array([[1,0,0,0],[0,1,0,0],[0,0,0,1],[0,0,1,0]])
idH = np.kron(np.identity(2), H)
print('D = ', H2 @ sigma_x2 @ idH @ CNOT @ idH @ sigma_x2 @ H2)
print('Dprime = ', sigma_x2 @ idH @ CNOT @ idH @ sigma_x2)
```

**Arbitrary** n This method only works for n=2. In general, we have a state proportional  $\sum_{x=0}^{2^n-1}|x\rangle|y\rangle$ , an oracle such that  $U_f|\overline{x}\rangle|y\rangle=-|\overline{x}\rangle|y\rangle$  while  $U_f|x\rangle|y\rangle=|x\rangle|y\rangle$  for all the other  $x\neq \overline{x}$ .

Now, we can write  $D' = 1 - 2|0\rangle\langle 0|_1$ : so  $D = 1 - 2|S\rangle\langle S|_1$ , with  $S = H^{\otimes 2}|0\rangle = \sum_{x=0}^{2^n-1}|x\rangle$ .

Our main gate will be  $G = DU_f$ . What does it do? first, it flips the component of the state along  $|\overline{x}\rangle$ ; then it flips the component along  $|S\rangle$ .

We know for sure that  $|S\rangle$  and  $|\overline{x}\rangle$  are not orthogonal: the angle between them will have  $\cos(\varphi) = 2^{-n/2}$ , the coefficient of  $|\overline{x}\rangle$  in  $|S\rangle$ . We are interested in  $\pi/2 - \varphi$ , which we will call  $\delta\theta$ .

It can be shown by a simple geometric argument that the application of G sends a state which has an angle  $\theta$  from the hyperplane  $|\overline{x}\rangle^{\perp}$  into a state with an angle  $\theta + 2\delta\theta$ . So, we need K applications of G to get  $\theta \to \pi/2$ , with  $K = (\pi/2)/(2\delta\theta)$ : since  $\sin \delta\theta = 2^{-n/2}$  and the rest are constants,  $K = O(\sqrt{2^n}) = O(\sqrt{N})$ , where N is the database size.

### 3.23.3 Quantum Fourier Transform

We have *n* qubits, and their states are  $|x\rangle$  with *x* ranging from 0 to N-1, with  $N=2^n$ .

**Classical FFT** The definition of the discrete Fourier transform of a vector  $x_i$ , with i = 0, ..., N-1,  $(N = 2^n)$  is

$$X_k = \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} x_j \exp\left(-\frac{2\pi i j k}{N}\right)$$
 (3.23.8)

To do this in  $O(N \log N)$  instead of  $O(N^2)$ , we split the sum into the even and odd parts:

$$X_k = \sum_{j=0}^{N/2-1} x_{2j} \exp\left(-\frac{2\pi i(2j)k}{N}\right) + \exp\left(-\frac{2\pi ik}{N}\right) \sum_{j=0}^{N/2-1} x_{2j+1} \exp\left(-\frac{2\pi i(2j)k}{N}\right)$$
(3.23.9)

Or in other words

$$FFT(x)_k = FFT(even(x))_k + \exp\left(-\frac{2\pi ik}{N}\right) FFT(odd(x))_k$$
 (3.23.10)

Then, we can apply the same split for the FFT of the even and odd parts, and so on.

This split will happen  $\log N = n$  times, after which there will just be one term in the sum. We have to to this computation once for every possible value of the result vector, so in the end the complexity is  $O(N \log N)$ .

#### Quantum version We define

$$QFT(|J\rangle) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} \exp\left(\frac{2\pi i J k}{N}\right) |k\rangle$$
 (3.23.11)

where as usual  $|k\rangle = |k_0k_1...k_{n-1}\rangle$ . So, we can rewrite this as a sum over all the  $k_\alpha$ :

$$QFT(|J\rangle) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \prod_{\alpha=0}^{n-1} \sum_{k_{\alpha}=0}^{1} \exp\left(-\frac{2\pi i J}{N}\right) \exp\left(\sum_{\alpha=0}^{n-1} k_{\alpha} 2^{n-\alpha-1}\right) |k\rangle$$
(3.23.12a)

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \prod_{\alpha=0}^{n-1} \sum_{k_{\alpha}=0}^{1} \exp(-2\pi i J) \exp\left(\sum_{\alpha=0}^{n-1} k_{\alpha} 2^{-\alpha-1}\right) |k\rangle$$
 (3.23.12b)

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \prod_{\alpha=0}^{n-1} \sum_{k_{\alpha}=0}^{1} \exp\left(-2\pi i J k_{\alpha} 2^{-\alpha-1}\right) |k\rangle$$
 (3.23.12c)

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \prod_{\alpha=0}^{n-1} \left( \sum_{k_{\alpha}=0}^{1} \exp\left(-2\pi i J k_{\alpha} 2^{-\alpha-1}\right) |k_{\alpha}\rangle \right)$$
(3.23.12d)

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \prod_{\alpha=0}^{n-1} \left( |0\rangle_{\alpha} + \exp\left(-2\pi i J 2^{-\alpha-1}\right) |1\rangle_{\alpha} \right)$$
 (3.23.12e)

but in the  $\exp(-2\pi i J 2^{\alpha})$  the terms in the binary expansion of J with a power higher than  $\alpha$  will just make the term rotate by  $2\pi$ , doing nothing.

So, to the Least Significant Bit  $|J_{n-1}\rangle$  we just apply a Hadamard. To the second LSB  $|J_{n-2}\rangle$  we apply a Hadamard, and then a control- $R_z(2\pi i/2^2)$ . In general

$$|J_{\alpha}\rangle \to \bigotimes_{k=2}^{n-\alpha} (C_{|J_{n-k+1}\rangle} - R_z)(2\pi i/2^k) \otimes H |J_{\alpha}\rangle$$
 (3.23.13)

## 3.23.4 Shor's algorithm

It is a method to factor a product of large numbers.

**Motivation: two-key RSA cryptography** Alice wants to communicate a message P to Bob. Bob generates a public key  $K_{Pu}$  and a private key  $K_{Pr}$ , he sends the public key  $K_{Pu}$  to Alice, who encodes the message with an algorithm E which depends on the public key:

$$C = E_{K_{Pu}}(P) = P^e \mod N$$
 (3.23.14)

where N is chosen such that N = pq, with  $p, q \in \mathbb{Z}_{prime}$ ,  $\Phi = (p-1)(q-1)$ ,  $1 < e < \Phi$ , and  $GCD(\Phi, e) = 1$ .

The *public key* is  $K_{Pu} = (N, e)$ ; the *private key* is  $K_{Pr} = \Phi$  or equivalently (p, q).

She then sends C to Bob, who uses  $K_{Pr}$  to decode it with an algorithm D:

$$P = D_{K_{Pr}}C = C^d \mod N (3.23.15)$$

where *d* is chosen such that  $de = 1 \mod \Phi$ .

This works because of Euler's theorem. If  $\Phi(x)$  is the totient function, which returns the number of naturals < x which are coprime with x, then since (unproven fact)  $\Phi$  is multiplicative,  $\Phi(pq) = (p-1)(q-1)$ .

The theorem says that for any P,  $P^{\Phi} \equiv 1 \mod N$ . If  $ed \equiv 1 \mod \Phi$  then  $ed = k\Phi + 1$  for some  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ . So:

$$P^{ed} = P^{k\Phi+1} \equiv P \mod N \tag{3.23.16}$$

So we can decrypt our message  $C = P^e$  by calculating  $C^d = P^{ed}$ .

In order to break the encryption we just need to factor N: if we have its factors then we can calculate  $\Phi$ , after which it is easy to find a suitable d.

Factoring N is equivalent to finding the period of a function: the *order* r is the smallest number such that  $x^r = 1 \mod N$ : if we define a function  $f(r) = x^r \mod N$ , then r is also the period of that function, since the condition reads f(r) = f(0).

If *r* is even, then  $y = x^{r/2}$ , so  $y^2 = 1 \mod N$  therefore  $(y+1)(y-1) = 0 \mod N$ .

Therefore (y+1)(y-1) = kN for some  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ , so we have found the factors.

**Shor's algorithm** Given N = pq, we have the following steps:

- 1. Choose x < N. If it divides N, we are done;
- 2. if they are not coprime (the check can be made quickly with Euclid's algorithm) start over;
- 3. find the order *r* of the function  $f(r) = x^r \mod N$ ;
- 4. if *r* is even, we have the factors. If it is not, start over.

The quantum part is in step 3, which can be done using the QFT.

**Hypotheses** These are not actually needed but they make treating the problem much simpler, and there is not much to learn in generalizing: we assume  $N = 2^n$  and  $N/r = m \in \mathbb{N}$ .

As always we cannot directly encode our function as a unitary transformation since it will be periodic, therefore not injective, therefore not unitary. So we encode it taking the input along, as

$$U: |x\rangle |0\rangle \longmapsto |x\rangle |f(x)\rangle \tag{3.23.17}$$

We start from  $|0\rangle^{\otimes 2n}$ , apply n Hadamards and get  $|\psi_0\rangle$  = superposition of all possible states  $\otimes |0\rangle^{\otimes n}$ , and with this we prepare

$$\left|\psi_{1}\right\rangle = U\left|\psi_{0}\right\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2^{n}}} \sum_{x=0}^{N} \left|x\right\rangle \left|f(x)\right\rangle$$
 (3.23.18)

**Step 2** We measure the second registry, and obtain  $|\overline{f(x_0)}\rangle$  for some  $x_0$ . Then the first registry must contain all the combinations which generate that state: so:

$$\left|\psi_{2}\right\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{m}} \sum_{j=0}^{m-1} \left|x_{0} + jr\right\rangle \left|\overline{f(x_{0})}\right\rangle \tag{3.23.19a}$$

$$= \left[ \frac{1}{\sqrt{m}} \sum_{j=0}^{m-1} |x_0 + jr\rangle \right] \otimes \left| \overline{f(x_0)} \right\rangle$$
 (3.23.19b)

Now we can discard the last n qubits.

**Step 3** We want to find r, so we can do a quantum Fourier transform. It can be slow to actually measure the full transform for generic functions but in our case the transform is applied to a function which is already periodic

$$|\psi_3\rangle = QFT\{|\psi_2\rangle\} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{mN}} \sum_{y=0}^{N-1} \sum_{j=0}^{m-1} \exp(2\pi i(x_0 + jr)y/N) |y\rangle$$
 (3.23.20)

**Step 4** We compute the probability of obtaining a specific value  $\overline{y}$  from a measure of the registry:

$$\mathbb{P}(\overline{y}) = \frac{1}{Nm} \left| \sum_{j=0}^{m-1} \exp\left(2\pi i (x_0 + jr)\overline{y}/N\right) \right|$$
(3.23.21a)

$$= \frac{1}{r} \left| \frac{1}{m} \sum_{j} \exp(2\pi i j \overline{y}/m) \right|$$
 (3.23.21b)

where we used the fact that N = mr, and removed a global phase from the square.

**Claim 3.23.1.** The states with nonzero probability to be found are those with  $\overline{y} = km$ , where  $k \in 0, ..., r$ .

*Proof.* If  $\overline{y} = km$  then the exponential is always equal to one. Recall that N = mr, so we have exactly r possible values of k for which this is true, since  $\overline{y} < N$ .

So, for each of these we have  $P(\overline{y} = km) = 1/r \Big| 1/m \sum_j 1 \Big| = 1/r$ : the probability is saturated.

So all the states we get are in the form  $\overline{y} = km = kN/r$ . We know N, we measured  $\overline{y}$ , so:

- if k = 0, we failed;
- if  $k \neq 0$ , we set  $\overline{y}/N = \overline{k}/r$  and find the solution in polynomial time.

It can be shown that  $\mathbb{P}(\text{success}) \sim 1$  after  $O(\log(\log(r)))$  tries.

Recall  $n = \log N$ : the complexity of Shor's algorithm scales as  $O(n^2 \log n \log \log n)$ , whereas the classical algorithm scales as  $\exp(O(\sqrt[3]{n \log n}))$ .

It is important to emphasize that no classical algorithm has been found which runs in polynomial time, but it has *not* been proven that it is impossible for one to be found.

# 3.23.5 Phase estimation algorithm

Take a unitary transformation U such that it gives a phase to a specific autoket:  $U|u\rangle = \exp(i\varphi)|u\rangle$ , where  $0 \le \varphi \le 2\pi$ : we want to estimate  $\varphi$ .

**Hypotheses** We assume we are able to prepare  $|u\rangle$ , and that we have a blackbox  $\left(C-U^{2^J}\right)$  for all  $0 \le J \le n-1$ : that is, a "control - U applied  $2^J$  times", such that  $\left(C-U^{2^J}\right)|0\rangle|u\rangle = |0\rangle|u\rangle$  and  $\left(C-U^{2^J}\right)|1\rangle|u\rangle = \exp\left(i2^J\varphi\right)|1\rangle|u\rangle$ . We write  $\varphi$  as

$$\varphi = 2\pi \left(\frac{a}{2^n} + \delta\right) = \overline{\varphi} + \delta \varphi \tag{3.23.22}$$

with  $0 \le \delta \le 2^{-n-1}$  and  $a = a_{n-1}a_{n-2}a_{n-3} \dots a_1a_0$ : we expressed it in binary, with some error.

**Algorithm** We introduce an ancillary registry of n qubits initialized to  $|0\rangle$ , while our main registry is made of m qubits, in which we encode  $|u\rangle$ . Their product is  $|\psi_0\rangle$ 

We apply a H to each of the qubits in the first registry, and then the gates  $(C - U^{2^J})$  for each  $0 \le J < n$  controlling on the J-th qubit each time.

The result of this operation is  $|\psi_1\rangle$ . We apply a QFT to the n control bits, and the result is  $|\psi_2\rangle$ .

What is the result of applying  $C - U^{2^J} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} W$ ? It rotates u, but the phase can only be measured on the first registry:

$$\left(C - U^{2^J}\right) \left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|0\rangle + |1\rangle) \otimes |u\rangle\right] = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left[W \left|0\right\rangle \left|u\right\rangle + W \left|1\right\rangle \left|u\right\rangle\right]$$
(3.23.23a)

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left[ |0\rangle |u\rangle + \exp(i2^{J}\varphi) |1\rangle |u\rangle \right]$$
 (3.23.23b)

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left[ |0\rangle + \exp\left(i2^{J}\varphi\right) |1\rangle \right] \otimes |u\rangle \tag{3.23.23c}$$

Now we can see what is the phase by measuring the ancillary qubits, for example if the phase was just -1 we could apply a Hadamard gate and measure along the  $\pm$ .

So the state  $|\psi_1\rangle$  is

$$|\psi_1\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2^n}} \left( \bigotimes_{J=0}^{n-1} \left( |0\rangle + \exp(i\varphi 2^J) |1\rangle \right) \right) \otimes |u\rangle$$
 (3.23.24)

which can be written as

$$|\psi_1\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2^n}} \sum_{y=0}^{N-1} \exp(i\varphi y) |y\rangle |u\rangle$$
 (3.23.25)

We recall

$$QFT^{-1}\left\{\left|y\right\rangle\right\} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2^n}} \sum_{r=0}^{2^n-1} \exp\left(-\frac{2\pi ixy}{2^n}\right) \left|x\right\rangle \tag{3.23.26}$$

therefore

$$\left|\psi_{2}\right\rangle = \text{QFT}^{-1}\left|\psi_{1}\right\rangle = \frac{1}{2^{n}} \sum_{x=0}^{2^{n}-1} \sum_{y=0}^{2^{n}-1} \exp\left(2\pi i(a-x)\frac{y}{2^{n}}\right) \exp\left(2\pi i\delta y\right) \left|x\right\rangle \left|u\right\rangle \tag{3.23.27a}$$

so

$$\mathbb{P}(b) = \left| \langle b | \frac{1}{2^n} \sum_{x} \sum_{y} \exp\left(2\pi i (a - x) \frac{y}{2^n}\right) \exp\left(2\pi i \delta y\right) | x \rangle \right|^2$$
 (3.23.28a)

$$= \left| \frac{1}{2^n} \sum_{y} \exp\left(\frac{-2\pi i y (a-b)}{2^n}\right) \exp\left(2\pi i \delta y\right) \right|^2$$
 (3.23.28b)

where  $\langle b| = 011101...$  from the computational basis.

Now, if the potential error  $\delta = 0$ , the probability of measuring "b = a" is just 1. If, instead,  $\delta \neq 0$ , we can ask the probability of measuring b = a.

$$\mathbb{P}(a) = \frac{1}{2^{2n}} \left| \sum_{y} \exp(2\pi i \delta y) \right|^2$$
 (3.23.29a)

$$= \frac{1}{2^{2n}} \left| \sum_{y} \left( \exp(2\pi i \delta) \right)^{y} \right|^{2}$$
 (3.23.29b)

$$= \frac{1}{2^{2n}} \left| \frac{1 - \alpha^{2^n}}{1 - \alpha} \right|^2 \tag{3.23.29c}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2^{2n}} \left| \frac{1 - \exp(2\pi i\delta)^{2^n}}{1 - \exp(2\pi i\delta)} \right|^2$$
 (3.23.29d)

$$= \frac{1}{2^{2n}} \left| \frac{\sin(\pi 2^n \delta)}{\sin(\pi \delta)} \right|^2 \tag{3.23.29e}$$

So, since  $\forall z \in [0, 1/2] : 2z \le \sin(\pi z) \le \pi z$ , then  $\mathbb{P}a \ge 4/\pi^2 \approx 0.4$ . Actually we can achieve  $\mathbb{P}(a) > 1 - \varepsilon$  with  $n = l + O(\log(1/\varepsilon))$ .

## 3.23.6 Eigensolver

We want to solve the Schrödinger equation

$$i\hbar\frac{\partial\psi}{\partial t} = H\psi\tag{3.23.30}$$

with our time evolution operator being  $U(t) = \exp\left(\frac{-iHt}{\hbar}\right)$ . The eigenvalues evolve like

$$\exp\left(\frac{-iE_{\alpha}t}{\hbar}\right)|E_{\alpha}\rangle\tag{3.23.31}$$

This is a phase! we can apply the methods from before.

**Spectroscopic method** This is a classical method, implemented on a classical computer. There is no measurement involved, this is all done on a computer, our Hamiltonian is just a black box program.

Starting from any state  $|\psi_0\rangle$ , the eigenvalue equation is  $H\phi_\alpha=E_\alpha\phi_\alpha$ . We can decompose our state like  $\psi_0(x)=\sum_\alpha a_\alpha\phi_\alpha$ . Then it evolves like

$$\psi_0(t) = \sum_{\alpha} a_{\alpha} \exp\left(\frac{-iE_{\alpha}t}{\hbar}\right) \phi_{\alpha}(x)$$
 (3.23.32)

We can do a Fourier transform, defining  $\omega_{\alpha}\hbar = E_{\alpha}$ :

$$\widetilde{\psi_0}(x_0,\omega) = \int \exp(i\omega t) \sum a_\alpha \exp(-i\omega_\alpha t) \phi_\alpha(x_0) dt$$
 (3.23.33a)

$$= \sum_{\alpha} a_{\alpha} \int_{0}^{T} \exp(i(\omega - \omega_{\alpha})t) \phi_{\alpha}(x) dt$$
 (3.23.33b)

$$\approx a_{\overline{\alpha}}\phi_{\overline{\alpha}}T + O(T^0) \tag{3.23.33c}$$

but this is peaked only at  $\omega = \omega_{\overline{\alpha}}$  for large T. We can measure  $a_{\overline{\alpha}}\phi_{\overline{\alpha}}T$  at different x positions, and find the eigenfunction at any point:

$$\phi_{\overline{\alpha}}(x_2) = \frac{\widetilde{\psi}(x_2, \omega_{\overline{\alpha}})}{\widetilde{\psi}(x_1, \omega_{\overline{\alpha}})} \phi_{\overline{\alpha}}(x_1)$$
(3.23.34)

In some cases doing this is easier than diagonalizing the Hamiltonian.

**Quantizing it** How to quantum-digitalize the problem? We start with a  $\psi(x)$  with  $x \in [-L, L]$ . We can discretize the points: we divide the interval into  $\Delta x = 2L/(2^n - 1)$  long steps.

Our function will then be  $\psi(i) = \psi(-L + i\Delta x)$ ,  $i \in \mathbb{N}$ .

$$\left|\psi\right\rangle = \sum_{i=0}^{2^{n}-1} \psi(i) \left|i\right\rangle \tag{3.23.35}$$

We can already see that we will have exponentially less memory usage than in the classical case.

We prepare  $|\psi_0\rangle = \overline{J}$ . We need our infinitesimal evolution operator  $U = \exp(-iH\Delta t/\hbar)$ . Our ancilla qubits are initialized to

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2^n}} \sum_{I=0} |J\rangle \tag{3.23.36}$$

(mapping to times  $0, \Delta t, 2\Delta t, \dots 2^{n-1}\Delta t$ ). With the same procedure as in 'Phase estimation algorithm' on page 81 we assume we have the control- $U^{2^{I}}$  gates and apply them all. We get all the possible time evolutions:

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2^n}} \sum |J\rangle U^J |\psi_0\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2^n}} \sum |J\rangle |\psi(J\Delta t)\rangle$$
 (3.23.37a)

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2^n}} \sum |J\rangle \sum a_{\alpha} \exp(-i\omega_{\alpha} J \Delta t) |\phi_{\alpha}\rangle$$
 (3.23.37b)

We apply QFT<sup>-1</sup>, measure the first registry and get a certain eigenvalue  $\omega_{\alpha}$ ; also, we have collapsed the second registry into the corresponding wavefunction  $\phi_{\alpha}$ , which we can then measure.

This enables us to get many eigenvalues by running this several times.

# 3.24 Error mitigation

Redundancy is the key to error mitigation: if the probability of error is  $\varepsilon \ll 1$ , if we have a duplicate the probability they both fail is proportional to  $\varepsilon^2 \ll \varepsilon$ .

### **Classical error correction** Redundancy + votation.

Alice wants to send a bit of information to Bob. To prevent mistakes, she sends three. If there is a probability  $\varepsilon$  of error, and that error happens, Bob gets two equal bits and a third different bit: so he can assume that the different bit is wrong.

We have several cases, if the sent message is  $0 \rightarrow 000$ , shown in figure 3.2.

Number	Received message	eived message   Probability	
1	000	$(1-\varepsilon)^3$	No
2	001, 010, 100	$3\varepsilon(1-\varepsilon)^2$	No
3	011, 101, 110	$3\varepsilon^2(1-\varepsilon)$	Yes
4	111	$\varepsilon^3$	Yes

Figure 3.2: Error correction probabilities

The probability of failure is then  $O(\varepsilon^2)$ .

### Trying to quantize it

- 1. We wish to do  $|\psi\rangle \rightarrow |\psi\rangle |\psi\rangle$ : this is not allowed; it can be done if we can prepare the state  $|\psi\rangle$  (say, it is one of the base states), but we cannot do so in general.
- 2. We want to do a votation: but this means we have to measure it. Maybe we can do a projection?
- 3. For classical bits we want to correct  $|0\rangle \leftrightarrow |1\rangle$ , but this is not the only possibility for quantum states.

## 3.24.1 3-qubit bit-flip code

We encode

$$|0\rangle \rightarrow \left|\widetilde{0}\right\rangle = \left|0\right\rangle \left|0\right\rangle \left|0\right\rangle$$
 (3.24.1a)

$$|1\rangle \rightarrow \left|\widetilde{1}\right\rangle = |1\rangle \left|1\rangle \left|1\right\rangle$$
 (3.24.1b)

and in general do

$$\left|\psi_{1}\right\rangle = \alpha\left|0\right\rangle + \beta\left|1\right\rangle \to \alpha\left|\widetilde{0}\right\rangle + \beta\left|\widetilde{1}\right\rangle = \alpha\left|0\right\rangle\left|0\right\rangle\left|0\right\rangle + \beta\left|1\right\rangle\left|1\right\rangle\left|1\right\rangle \tag{3.24.2}$$

This can be physically made with two CNOTs.

We did not clone the state! That would have been  $(\alpha |0\rangle + \beta |1\rangle)^{\otimes 3}$ .

Number	Received message	Probability	Final state
1	$lpha\ket{0}\ket{0}\ket{0}+eta\ket{1}\ket{1}\ket{1}\ket{1}$	$(1-\varepsilon)^3$	$ \alpha 0\rangle 0\rangle 0\rangle + \beta 1\rangle 1\rangle 1\rangle$
2	perms. of $\alpha  1\rangle  0\rangle  0\rangle + \beta  0\rangle  1\rangle  1\rangle$	$3\varepsilon(1-\varepsilon)^2$	$\mid \alpha \mid 0 \rangle \mid 0 \rangle \mid 0 \rangle + \beta \mid 1 \rangle \mid 1 \rangle \mid 1 \rangle$
3	perms. of $\alpha  1\rangle  1\rangle  0\rangle + \beta  0\rangle  0\rangle  1\rangle$	$3\varepsilon^2(1-\varepsilon)$	$\mid \alpha \mid 1 \rangle \mid 1 \rangle \mid 1 \rangle + \beta \mid 0 \rangle \mid 0 \rangle \mid 0 \rangle$
4	$lpha\ket{1}\ket{1}\ket{1} + eta\ket{0}\ket{0}\ket{0}$	$arepsilon^3$	$\mid \alpha \mid 1 \rangle \mid 1 \rangle \mid 1 \rangle + \beta \mid 0 \rangle \mid 0 \rangle \mid 0 \rangle$

Figure 3.3: Error correction probabilities for the quantum version

We can do the correction by measuring correlations, without doing a projective measurement:  $x_0 = \left\langle \sigma_z^1 \sigma_z^2 \right\rangle$ ,  $x_1 = \left\langle \sigma_z^1 \sigma_z^3 \right\rangle$ .

These can be measured by introducing two ancillary qubits and applying a CNOT to them: for example, to measure  $\sigma_z^1 \sigma_z^2$  we apply two CNOTs to the first ancillary qubit, first controlling on 1, then controlling on 2: in the end, we have four different possibilities for  $|x_0x_1\rangle$ : so, we measure these along the computational basis and apply to the main qubits a gate, selected according to table 3.4.

$x_0x_1$	operation
00	1
01	$\sigma_x^3$
10	$\sigma_x^2$
11	$\sigma_x^1$

Figure 3.4: Error correction protocol

We also get  $x_0x_1 = 00$  for the case where all the bits are flipped, but it is all right since it is  $O(\varepsilon^3)$ .

## 3.24.2 3-qubit phase-flip code

What if our error is a phase flip instead of a bit flip? Something like that could be caused by an unknown magnetic field making our state rotate, like  $|0\rangle \rightarrow |0\rangle$ ,  $|1\rangle \rightarrow -|1\rangle$ . This can be corrected with a Hadamard gate, and then applying the 3 qubit-flip code.

## 3.24.3 9-qubit Shor code

To account for all kinds of (unitary) errors, we can use

$$|0\rangle \rightarrow \left|\widetilde{0}\right\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{8}}(|000\rangle + |111\rangle)^{\otimes 3}$$
 (3.24.3a)

$$|1\rangle \rightarrow \left|\widetilde{1}\right\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{8}}(|000\rangle - |111\rangle)^{\otimes 3}$$
 (3.24.3b)

This of course is very resource-heavy.

Experts think we should be able to achieve fault-free computation with  $\varepsilon \sim 10^{-3 \div 4}$ .

**Example** We have an error like  $|0\rangle \rightarrow |0\rangle$ ,  $|1\rangle \rightarrow \exp(i\varphi) |1\rangle$ .

We encode 1 of these qubits with two qubits, like  $|01\rangle \equiv |0\rangle$  and  $|10\rangle \equiv |1\rangle$ : now these both take a phase of  $\exp(i\varphi)$ : we moved to a smaller subspace which is invariant under this transformation.

# 3.25 Time-dependent perturbation theory

We have an atom or some quantum system, and we manipulate it by sending an EM pulse against it. How will it change?

Say we have some discrete energy levels, and a continuous spectrum after some threshold energy. The photon can excite the ground state  $|i\rangle$  to some excited state  $|f\rangle$ , or vice versa. This can happen between discrete energies, or with the continuous energies.

We need to solve the time-dep Schrödinger equation:

$$i\hbar \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} |\psi(t)\rangle = \left[H_0 + \lambda W(t)\right] |\psi(t)\rangle$$
 (3.25.1)

We work with the unperturbed eigenstates  $H_0 | \varphi_n \rangle = E_n | \varphi_n \rangle$ , we assume  $\lambda \ll 1$ , and we say that the starting state at t = 0 is an unperturbed eigenstate.

What is the probability of getting a state *f*?

$$\mathbb{P}_{if}(t) = \left| \left\langle \varphi_f \middle| \psi(t) \right\rangle \right|^2 \tag{3.25.2}$$

we can get resonance. For continuous states this changes a bit but we can generalize. We expand

$$|\psi(t)\rangle = \sum c_n(t) |\varphi_n\rangle \qquad c_n(t) = \langle \varphi_n | \psi(t) \rangle$$
 (3.25.3)

We can compute the matrix elements of the perturbation:  $\langle \varphi_n | W(t) | \varphi_k \rangle = W_{nk}(t)$  and of the Hamiltonian:  $\langle \varphi_n | H_0 | \varphi_k \rangle = \delta_{nk} E_n$ . Putting these in the Schrödinger equation, we get

$$i\hbar \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}c_n(t) = E_n c_n(t) + \sum_k \lambda W_{nk} c_k(t)$$
 (3.25.4)

We go in interaction picture:  $b_n(t) = c_n(t) \exp(+iE_nt/\hbar)$ , which nullifies the unperturbed evolution. Putting this inside the equation we get

$$i\hbar \dot{b}_n(t) = \lambda \sum_{k} \exp(i\omega_{nk}t) W_{nk} b_k(t)$$
 (3.25.5)

with  $\omega_{nk=(E_n-E_k)/\hbar}$ . We can expand the  $b_n(t)$  in  $\lambda$ :

$$b_n(t) = \sum_{i} b_n^{(i)} \lambda^i(t)$$
 (3.25.6)

We know that for some i we must have  $b_n^{(r)}(t=0) = \delta_{ni}\delta_{r0}$  since we assume the system starts in an eigenstate i of the unperturbed Hamiltonian.

$$i\hbar \dot{b}_n^{(0)}(t) = 0$$
 (3.25.7)

$$i\hbar \dot{b}_{n}^{(r)}(t) = \sum_{k} \exp(i\omega_{nk}t) W_{nk} b_{n}^{r-1}(t)$$
 (3.25.8)

Then to order  $\lambda^1$  we only have one term in the sum:

$$i\hbar \dot{b}_n(t) = \exp(i\omega_{ni}t)W_{ni}(t) \tag{3.25.9}$$

or, in integral form:

$$b_n^{(1)}(t) = \frac{1}{i\hbar} \int_0^t d\tau \exp(i\omega_{ni}\tau) W_{ni}(\tau)$$
 (3.25.10)

So 
$$\mathbb{P}_{if}(t) = \left| c_f(t) \right|^2 = \left| b_f(t) \right|^2$$

$$\mathbb{P}_{if}(t) = \frac{\lambda^2}{\hbar^2} \left| \int_0^t d\tau \exp\left(i\omega_{fi}\tau\right) W_{gi}(\tau) \right|^2$$
 (3.25.11)

**Example** Let us take a  $W(t) = -W \sin(\omega t)[t \ge 0]$ . Then, up to a phase the following sequence of equalities holds:

$$b_n^{(1)}(t) = -\frac{W_{ni}}{2i\hbar} \int_0^t d\tau \left( \exp\left(i(\omega_{ni} + \omega)\tau\right) - \exp\left(i(\omega_{ni} - \omega)\tau\right) \right)$$
(3.25.12a)

$$= -\frac{W_{ni}}{2i\hbar} \left| \frac{e^{i(\omega_{if} + \omega)t} - 1}{i(\omega_{if} + \omega)} - \frac{e^{i(\omega_{if} - \omega)t} - 1}{i(\omega_{if} - \omega)} \right|$$
(3.25.12b)

$$= +\frac{W_{ni}}{2i\hbar} \left[ \frac{e^{i(\Delta\omega)t/2} - e^{-i(\Delta\omega)t/2}}{i(\Delta\omega)} \right]$$
(3.25.12c)

$$= +\frac{W_{ni}}{2\hbar} \frac{\sin(\Delta\omega t/2)}{\Delta\omega/2} \tag{3.25.12d}$$

So,

$$\mathbb{P}_{if}(t,\omega) = \frac{\left|W_{if}\right|^2}{4\hbar^2} F(t,\omega - \omega_{fi})$$
(3.25.13)

where

$$F(\omega, t) = \left(\frac{\sin(\omega t/2)}{\omega/2}\right)^2 \tag{3.25.14}$$

This is a sinc squared.

## 3.25.1 Fermi's golden rule

Is applying what we saw to continuous spectrums. Now we have some states described by eigenvalues  $\alpha$ , with  $\langle \alpha | \alpha' \rangle = \delta(\alpha - \alpha')$ . We want to see what is the probability of the final state being in a neighbourhood of  $\alpha$ .

We define the state density by  $d\alpha = \rho(\beta, E) d\beta dE$  where the index  $\beta$  takes account of the degeneracy, which can be continuous, while E is the energy.

The probability of the final being in a neighbourhood  $D_f$  is given by:

$$\delta \mathbb{P}(\alpha_f, t) = \int d\alpha \left| \langle \alpha | \psi(t) \rangle \right|^2 [\alpha \in D_f]$$
 (3.25.15)

So, we can change variable into

$$\delta \mathbb{P}\left(\alpha_f, t\right) = \int \left| \langle \beta, E | \psi(t) \rangle \right|^2 \rho(E, \beta) \, dE \, d\beta \tag{3.25.16}$$

**Sinusoidal perturbation** We can express the transition probability density in the form of (3.25.13):

$$\left| \left\langle \beta, E \middle| \psi(t) \right\rangle \right|^2 = \frac{\left| \left\langle \beta, E \middle| W \middle| \varphi_i \right\rangle \right|^2}{\hbar^2} F\left(t, \frac{E - E_i}{\hbar}\right) \tag{3.25.17}$$

Let us integrate wrt energy in the  $t \to \infty$  limit:

$$\int dE F = \int dE \frac{\sin^2(\Delta \omega t/2)}{(\Delta \omega t/2)^2} t^2$$
(3.25.18)

we change variable, using  $dE = d\Delta E = \hbar d\Delta \omega$  we will integrate wrt  $x = \Delta \omega t/2$ :

$$\int dE \frac{\sin^2(\Delta \omega t/2)}{(\Delta \omega t/2)^2} t^2 = \int dx \frac{\sin^2(x)}{x^2} t^2 \frac{2\hbar}{t}$$
 (3.25.19a)

$$=2\hbar t\pi \tag{3.25.19b}$$

So, we know the integral of F. Now, since we are going to integrate it anyway, to simplify calculations we will assume it looks like  $\lim_{t\to\infty} F(t,\Delta\omega) = ht\delta(\Delta E)$ . Note that this  $\Delta E$  is *not* the difference between the initial and final energies, but corresponds to the difference between the excitation energy  $\omega\hbar$  and the difference between the final and initial energies.

We can substitute in:

$$\delta \mathbb{P}(\varphi_i, \alpha_f, t) = \delta \beta_f \frac{2\pi t}{\hbar} \left| \left\langle \beta_f, E_f \middle| W \middle| \varphi_i \right\rangle \right|^2 \rho(\beta, E_f) \delta(\Delta E)$$
 (3.25.20)

Then we express this more explicitly, and insert a  $\pm$  to account for the possibility of stimulated *emission* instead of *absorption*. Since  $\mathbb{P}$  depends linearly on t, we compute the *rate* of emission.

$$W(\varphi_i, \alpha_f) = \frac{1}{t} \frac{\delta \mathbb{P}}{\delta \beta} = \frac{2\pi}{\hbar} \left| \left\langle \beta_f, E_f = E_i \pm \hbar \omega \middle| W \middle| \varphi_i \right\rangle \right|^2 \rho(\beta_f, E_f = E_i \pm \hbar \omega)$$
(3.25.21)

The more states we have in the final configuration, the greater the probability. We are assuming here that the state density is constant in the degeneracy, and we can split the degeneracy and energy contributions.

**Constant perturbation** The formula we get is similar, but the energies are equal in the initial and final state:

$$W(\varphi_i, \alpha_f) = \frac{2\pi}{\hbar} \left| \left\langle \beta_f, E_f = E_i \middle| W \middle| \varphi_i \right\rangle \right|^2 \rho(\beta_f, E_f = E_i)$$
 (3.25.22)

# 3.26 How to build a quantum computer

**Di Vincenzo criteria** (2000): what is needed to have a true quantum computer.

- 1. Scalability, well defined and reproducible qubits;
- 2. Reset: we must be able to reset the computer surely into a state  $|0\rangle$ ;
- 3. Long coherence time wrt gate duration: if our decoherence time is  $\tau_d$  and our gate time is  $\tau_g$ , we need  $\tau_d/\tau_g \gtrsim 10^4$  in order to have time to do error correction;
- 4. Universal set of gates;
- 5. Efficient (reliable) readout;

Proposals:

• Cavity: QED;

- Solid-state electron spins;
- Cold atoms;
- Trapped ions;
- Superconductive circuits.

## 3.26.1 Trapped ions

We can trap them with electric fields, in what is called a *Pauli trap*. We cannot have a stable equilibrium in 3D with a static electric field, because of Gauss's law: the divergence would be negative there. This generalizes to magnetic fields.

We can work around it by making them time-dependent. Think of it like this: saddle which spins, an object in the saddle point will be stable if the rotation is fast enough.

We get three harmonic oscillators, with  $\omega_{x,y} \gg \omega_z$ . The *z* direction is the 'quantum' degree of freedom: the state comes from the atom state *i* and the oscillator state *n*.

Can we put many qubits in there? Our Hamiltonian will be

$$H = \sum \frac{p_i^2}{2m} + \sum \frac{1}{2}\omega_z^2 z_i^2 + \sum_i \sum_{j < i} \frac{q^2}{4\pi\varepsilon_0 |r_i - r_j|}$$
(3.26.1)

They repel each other, we can diagonalize this matrix and get the modes of oscillation.

So we have  $|\alpha_1\alpha_2...\alpha_N, n\rangle$  where the n is the global oscillation. Our single qubit is  $|\alpha_i, n\rangle$ . We have the states  $|g, 0\rangle$ ,  $|g, 1\rangle$ ,  $|g, 2\rangle$  ... and  $|e, 0\rangle$ ,  $|e, 1\rangle$  ...

We can use a laser to excite the ground state into a vibrational excited state... we choose the right frequency to go from  $|g,k\rangle$  to  $|e,k-1\rangle$  which spontaneously decays into  $|g,k-1\rangle$ . This is *side-band cooling*: it allows us to prepare  $|0\rangle$  with  $\mathbb{P} > 99.9\%$ .

We can have Zeeman-like perturbations of our qubits, but it is an issue we can fix as outlined in 'Example' on page 86.

**Gates** Cirac-Zoller Gate: allows us to entangle states with stuff like a CPHASE by interacting with the global vibration.

# 3.26.2 Superconductive qubit

Something like Bose-condensing electrons: Cooper pairs, with opposing momentums: so the entanglement is in the Fourier space, they are very delocalized in the position space. Cooper pair currents are the superconductive currents.

We use Josephson juctions inside regular circuits: two superconductors, separated by a thin insulant. Cooper pairs can tunnel through the insulant.

Charge qubit: quantum numbers inside the superconductor are n,  $\varphi = i\partial_n$ , with  $[n, \varphi] = i$ .

$$H = E_C \left( n - n_g \right)^2 - E_J \cos \varphi \tag{3.26.2}$$

with  $n_g = c_g V/(2e)$ , and  $E_C = (2e)^2/(2(C_J + C_g))$ . We can write the eigenstates as  $|n\rangle$ , and

$$H = E_C \sum (n - n_g) |n\rangle\langle n| - \frac{1}{2} E_J \sum (|n + 1\rangle\langle n| + |n\rangle\langle n + 1|)$$
(3.26.3)

So, at the crossing points corresponding to  $n_g \in \mathbb{N} + 1/2$  the perturbation makes it so that the parabolas do not actually cross: there is a gap, which forms the charge qubit.

## 3.27 Laboratory experiences

## 3.27.1 Photon indivisibility

We wish to prove that the photon is an indivisible particle.

**Setup** Our *main* experimental setup is an incoming light wave, a beamsplitter and two photodetectors on either side, labelled 1 and 2.

We call the number of times the *i*-th detector goes off  $N_i$ , and the amount of times two detectors go off together  $N_{ij}$ .

**Parametric down-conversion** We wish to get to the single-photon level: therefore, we have the laser impact a birefractive crystal which, around  $10^{-6}$  to  $10^{-8}$  of the times it is hit with a photon, creates a pair of coherently polarized photons.

This is because an incoming photon with energy  $\omega$  can excite a resonance corresponding to the second-order term in the series expansion of the polarization with respect to the electric field strength: this will have energy  $2\omega$  and will spontaneously down-convert to a pair of photons with energy  $\omega$ .

These are emitted in a state like:

$$\int_{0}^{\pi} d\varphi \left| \theta_{C}, \varphi, V \right\rangle \otimes \left| \theta_{C}, \pi + \varphi, V \right\rangle \tag{3.27.1}$$

where the first two quantum numbers are angles denoting the direction of emission (in standard spherical coordinates, with the z axis along the direction of propagation of the photons which are not deflected),  $\theta_C \sim 4^\circ$ .

So, they are emitted in pairs which form a cone. The third quantum number denotes the polarization, which is the same for the two photons.

In two antipodal positions on the cone we position the beam splitter and the entrance of a fiber optic cable; the latter should be as long as the distance between the beam splitter and the detectors. At the end of this cable we put a third detector, whose count will be called  $N_3$ .

In this way, light will reach any detector in the same time from the crystal.

Now, we want to calculate probabilities like  $N_{12}/(N_1N_2)$ , but in order to have much less noise we condition all of these on the event of the third detector firing. This is since, to give an order of magnitude, one of these detectors will go off  $10^6$  times a second, and have a dark count (detecting nonexistent light) of something like  $10^2$  Hz.

So, denoting with a | the conditional counts:

$$N_{12|3} = \frac{N_{123}}{N_3}$$
  $N_{1|3} = \frac{N_{13}}{N_3}$   $N_{2|3} = \frac{N_{23}}{N_3}$  (3.27.2)

**Theoretical considerations: wave vs particle** We wish to put bounds on the quantity experimentally calculated as

$$g = \frac{\left\langle N_{12|3} \right\rangle}{\left\langle N_{1|3} \right\rangle \left\langle N_{2|3} \right\rangle} = \frac{\left\langle N_{123} \right\rangle}{\left\langle N_{13} \right\rangle \left\langle N_{23} \right\rangle} \left\langle N_{3} \right\rangle \tag{3.27.3}$$

where the average is temporal. We hereafter drop the "|3" from the detection numbers, but always imply it.

Indivisible particle theory predicts that, if the photons come slow enough to be seen as "one at a time" by the detectors,  $N_{12} = 0$  since the photon cannot be detected on both sides. So, g = 0; realistically it will be higher than 0 because of noise.

Classical wave theory predicts that the number of times the detector will go off is proportional to the intensity of the incoming light  $(N_i \propto I_i)$ ; also the light is split by the beamsplitter into two lower-intensity beams, which are constant in time, therefore the probabilities of the two detectors going off are independent:  $N_{12} = N_1 N_2 \propto I_1 I_2$ .

The intensity is split according to the coefficients  $\mathcal{R}$ ,  $\mathcal{T}$  with  $\mathcal{R} + \mathcal{T} = 1$ :

$$I = \underbrace{\mathcal{T}I}_{\text{going to detector 1}} + \underbrace{\mathcal{R}I}_{\text{going to detector 2}}$$
 (3.27.4)

We can put these into the computation of *g*; since they are constants they can be taken out of the averages. Also, the constants in the proportionality relations between *N* and *I* simplify.

$$g = \frac{\langle \mathcal{R}I\mathcal{T}I \rangle}{\langle \mathcal{R}I \rangle \langle \mathcal{T}I \rangle} = \frac{\langle I^2 \rangle}{\langle I \rangle \langle I \rangle} \ge 1$$
 (3.27.5)

because of the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality:  $\int I^2 dt \ge (\int I dt)^2$ .

This allows us to falsify the classical wave hypothesis with results of g < 1.

## 3.27.2 Experimental Bell violation

We wish to violate a CHSH inequality, as theoretically explained in 'Bell Inequalities' on page 71.

In order to do it, we need an entangled state: how do we create it using birefractive crystals? We know that we can orient the crystal such that if a photon comes in with V (vertical) polarization, it can come out in a state like  $|\theta,H\rangle_A\otimes|\pi+\theta,H\rangle_B$ . Also, we can orient it such that if a photon comes in with H (horizontal) polarization, it can come out in a state like  $|\theta,V\rangle_A\otimes|\pi+\theta,V\rangle_B$ . In both cases, if the light comes in with the other polarization it just goes straight through. Also, both of these processes are coherent.

These are both separable states, but we can create entangled ones by putting two of these crystals one after another, at right angles to each other, and having the light come in at  $\pi/4$  radians with respect to both. So, the state we get is:

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|H\rangle + |V\rangle) \to \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|H\rangle_A |H\rangle_B + |V\rangle_A |V\rangle_B) \tag{3.27.6}$$

**Half-wave plate** The state of an incoming photon can be represented as  $|\psi\rangle = \alpha |H\rangle + \beta |V\rangle$ ; then in this basis a Half-Wave Plate at an angle  $\theta$  wrt the H direction operates<sup>1</sup> as the unitary gate

$$HWP = \begin{bmatrix} \cos(2\theta) & \sin(2\theta) \\ -\sin(2\theta) & \cos(2\theta) \end{bmatrix}$$
 (3.27.7)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>See http://quantum.info/publications/theses/Robert\_Prevedel\_Diplomand\_thesis.pdf

**Polarizing beamsplitter** It sends incoming light in two different directions depending on its polarization: it effectively is our projective measuring device.

Putting a HWP at an angle  $\theta/2$  before the polarizing beam splitter we can measure along the basis at an angle  $\theta$  from HV. We have two detectors corresponding to the two directions along which the BS sends photons.

**CHSH violation** The basis we choose,  $a_{1,2}$  and  $b_{1,2}$  correspond to two pairs of angles for the Half-Wave Plates. Since our state is not a singlet, the result in (3.19.7c) has a plus instead of a minus, therefore our two choices for a will be the same, corresponding to  $2\theta_{1,2}^a = 0$ ,  $\pi/2$  but the choices for b will correspond to  $2\theta_{1,2}^b = \pi/4$ ,  $-\pi/4$  instead. This ensures that the only negative scalar product is the one between  $a_1$  and  $b_1$ .

The way we measure these correlations is just counting up the result to estimate the probabilities: since the eigenvalues of the measurements are  $A_i$ ,  $B_i = \pm 1$ :

$$\langle A \otimes B \rangle = \sum A_i B_j \mathbb{P}(A_i B_j) = \frac{N_{++} + N_{--} - N_{+-} - N_{-+}}{N_{++} + N_{--} + N_{+-} + N_{-+}}$$
(3.27.8)

where the + and - subscripts indicate the result of the measurement:  $N_{+-}$  is the number of times we obtained a positive result from the measurement of the A photon and a negative one from the B photon.

Experimentally, with this setup we can obtain a value of

$$|S| = |\langle A \otimes B \rangle + \langle A \otimes B' \rangle + \langle A' \otimes B \rangle - \langle A' \otimes B' \rangle| > 2$$
 (3.27.9)

where A, A' are the bases corresponding to  $\theta_{1,2}^a = 0$ ,  $\pi/4$ , while B, B' are the bases corresponding to  $\theta_{1,2}^b = \pi/8$ ,  $-\pi/8$ .

# 3.28 Distances in state space

Creating convex combinations of states should always be allowed, and we see this in the fact that the space of states is convex: if we can have the state  $\rho_1$  with probability  $\mu$  and  $\rho_2$  with probability  $1 - \mu$ , and both states are characterized by a Bloch vector  $\vec{\lambda}_{1,2}$  then the total state will be represented by a density matrix like

$$\rho = \mu \rho_1 + (1 - \mu)\rho_2 = \frac{1}{2}\mathbb{1} + \frac{1}{2}\left(\mu \vec{\lambda}_1 + (1 - \mu)\vec{\lambda}_2\right) \cdot \vec{\sigma}$$
 (3.28.1)

Where we can see that we get a convex combination of the Bloch vectors.

States are usually decomposable as probabilistic mixtures, which are convex combinations in some generalized "Bloch space".

## 3.28.1 Telling states apart

We are given two states  $\rho_{1,2}$ : what is the measurement which maximizes the probability we will be able to tell one from the other?

In the classical version of the problem, the two density matrices always "share an eigenbasis" — or, more simply, classical probability theory deals with probabilities of well-defined and common sets of events — so we can work with the probability vectors:  $\vec{p} = (p_i)$ ,  $\vec{q} = (q_i)$ , which represent probabilities of the *same states*. We can use the " $\ell_1$ " metric:

$$d(p,q) = \sum_{i} |p_i - q_i|$$
 (3.28.2)

#### Claim 3.28.1. This is a distance.

*Proof.* Symmetry and positivity are easy to see, and the triangular inequality is satisfied for any element of the sum:  $|p_i - q_i| \le |p_i - f_i| + |f_i - q_i|$  for any i.

In general, however,  $[\rho_1, \rho_2] \neq 0$  and we do not have a common eigenbasis.

Any metric defines an *evaluation* map from observables to numbers:  $A \to \operatorname{Tr} (\rho A) = \langle A \rangle_{\rho}$ .

We can define our distance to be  $\sup_A \left| \langle A \rangle_{\rho_1} - \langle A \rangle_{\rho_2} \right|$ . To avoid meaningless divergences we could get by scaling the operators, we restrict ourselves to  $\|A\| = 1$ , where the operator norm is defined by

$$||A|| = \sup_{\psi \neq 0} \frac{||A\psi||}{||\psi||}$$
 (3.28.3)

So our distance is

$$d = \sup_{\|A\|=1} |\text{Tr} [A(\rho_1 - \rho_2)]|$$
 (3.28.4)

We can put bounds on this norm as such:

$$\left|\operatorname{Tr}\left(AB\right)\right| = \sum_{i} b_{i} \left\langle i|A|i\right\rangle$$
 (3.28.5a)

$$\leq \sum_{i} |b_{i}| \langle i|A|i\rangle \tag{3.28.5b}$$

$$\leq \|A\|\sum_{i}|b_{i}|\tag{3.28.5c}$$

$$\leq ||A|| \operatorname{Tr} |B| \tag{3.28.5d}$$

Where  $B = \sum_i b_i |i\rangle\langle i|$ ), and we call  $||B||_1 = \text{Tr} |B|$ , where the modulus of the operator can be thought of eigenvalue-wise (diagonalizing the operator, and then flipping the sign of all the negative eigenvalues).

So

$$d \le ||A|| ||\rho_1 - \rho_2||_1 = ||\rho_1 - \rho_2||_1 \tag{3.28.6}$$

since ||A|| = 1.

**Claim 3.28.2.** This in an equality (there always exists an A to do the job).

*Proof.* Let us call  $B = \rho_1 - \rho_2$ . We wish to find an A such that  $\text{Tr}(AB) = ||B||_1$ . First we diagonalize  $B = \sum_i b_i |i\rangle\langle i|$ . We pick:

$$A = \sum_{i} (-)^{[b_i < 0]} |i\rangle\langle i|$$
 (3.28.7)

Then we will get

$$\operatorname{Tr}(AB) = \sum_{j} \langle j | \left( \sum_{i} (-)^{[b_{i} < 0]} |i\rangle\langle i| \right) \left( B \sum_{k} b_{k} |k\rangle\langle k| \right) |j\rangle$$
 (3.28.8a)

$$= \sum_{k} (-)^{[b_k < 0]} b_k = \sum_{k} |b_k| = ||B||_1$$
 (3.28.8b)

Claim 3.28.3. We get back the classical case if the matrices commute.

*Proof.* In that case we can just write  $\rho_1 - \rho_2$  in the common eigenbasis as  $\sum_i (p_{i,1} - p_{i,2}) |i\rangle\langle i|$ . The result follows.

We define  $D(\rho_1, \rho_2) = \frac{1}{2} \|\rho_1 - \rho_2\|_1$ , since the d we used before is upper-bounded by 2, by the triangular inequality.

**Measurements** Take a 2-element POVM:  $E_{1,2} \ge 0$  and the states from before:  $\rho_{1,2}$ .

Say we get the states  $\rho_i$  with 50% probability each, and we wish to select the POVM which best allows us to distinguish them and figure out which is which: we want  $E_i$  to correspond to  $\rho_i$ . Then

$$\mathbb{P}(\text{success}) = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \text{Tr}(E_1 \rho_1) + \text{Tr}(E_2 \rho_2) \right]$$
(3.28.9a)

$$\mathbb{P}(\text{error}) = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \text{Tr}(E_1 \rho_2) + \text{Tr}(E_2 \rho_1) \right]$$
 (3.28.9b)

We want to maximize  $\mathbb{P}(\text{success})$ . We can rewrite it as:

$$\mathbb{P}(\text{success}) = \frac{1}{2} \Big[ \text{Tr}(E_1 \rho_1) + \text{Tr}\left( (\mathbb{1} - E_1) \rho_2 \right) \Big]$$
(3.28.10a)

$$= \frac{1}{2} \Big[ 1 + \text{Tr} \left( E_1(\rho_1 - \rho_2) \right) \Big]$$
 (3.28.10b)

to maximize over  $E_1$ .

Claim 3.28.4. The optimum (Hellstrom optimal measurement) is

$$\mathbb{P}(\text{success}) = \frac{1}{2} \left[ 1 + \frac{1}{2} \| \rho_1 - \rho_2 \|_1 \right]$$
 (3.28.11)

This is 1 if they are maximally different, 1/2 if they are indistinguishable.

*Proof.* The difference from the operator we used in (3.28.7) is that now we must have  $E_1 \ge 0$ , so it cannot have negative eigenvalues: so, we pick it to be the projection over the positive eigenvalues of the difference between the matrices.

If 
$$\delta \rho = \rho_1 - \rho_2 = \sum_i p_i |i\rangle\langle i|$$
, then  $E_1 = \sum_i [p_i \geq 0] |i\rangle\langle i|$ .

So, the trace of  $E_1\delta\rho$  will be given by the sum of the positive eigenvalues of  $\delta\rho$ .

By linearity of the trace we know that  $\text{Tr}(\delta \rho) = 0$ . Then, the sum of its positive eigenvalues must be half of the sum of all the eigenvalues' absolute values.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>See 'POVMs' on page 65

**Bhattacharyya distance** We have two probability vectors  $\vec{p} = (p_i)$ ,  $\vec{q} = (q_i)$ . We want them to be normalized in the euclidean metric, so we take the square root component by component, defining  $V_p = (\sqrt{p_i})$ .

We define the distance

$$d_B(\vec{p}, \vec{q}) = \cos^{-1}(\vec{V}_p \cdot \vec{V}_q) = \cos^{-1}\left(\sum_i \sqrt{p_i q_i}\right)$$
 (3.28.12)

#### Claim 3.28.5. This is a distance.

*Proof.* As usual, positivity and symmetry are easy. The triangular inequality amounts to seeing that, if we pick three points on  $S^n$ , an angle between two of them must be less than the sum of the other two angles.

This can be proven WLOG in 3D space, since we can restrict ourselves to the span of the three vectors. Then, it is a boring calculation: you write out the Gramian matrix for the euclidean scalar product, which must have a positive determinant, and the result comes from the fact that  $\cos^{-1}$  is decreasing.<sup>1</sup>

**Quantize it!** We have a POVM  $\mathbb{E} = \{E_i\}$ , and two probability distributions  $\rho$  and  $\sigma$ . We can define the probability vectors

$$P_{\rho,i} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Tr}(E_i \rho) \qquad P_{\sigma,i} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Tr}(E_i \sigma)$$
 (3.28.13)

and apply the Bhattacharyya distance to them:

$$d_B(\rho,\sigma) = \sup_{\mathbb{E}} d_B(\vec{P}_\rho, \vec{P}_\sigma)$$
 (3.28.14)

**Claim 3.28.6.** *In the pure state case, where*  $\rho = |\phi\rangle\langle\phi|$ *,*  $\sigma = |\psi\rangle\langle\psi|$ *:* 

$$d_B(\rho, \sigma) = \cos^{-1} \left| \langle \phi | \psi \rangle \right| \tag{3.28.15}$$

This is the *Fubini-Study metric* over a projective Hilbert space.

*Proof.* Proving this is useful because it shows us techniques, tools. We wish to prove

$$\cos^{-1} \left| \left\langle \phi \middle| \psi \right\rangle \right| = \sup_{\mathbb{E}} \cos^{-1} \left( \sum_{i} \sqrt{p_i^{\mathbb{E}}(\phi)} \sqrt{p_i(\psi)^{\mathbb{E}}} \right) \tag{3.28.16}$$

We can derive an inequality for the arguments of the arccosines:

$$\left| \left\langle \phi \middle| \psi \right\rangle \right| = \left| \sum_{i} \left\langle \phi \middle| E_{i} \middle| \psi \right\rangle \right| \tag{3.28.17a}$$

$$\leq \sum_{i} \left| \left\langle \phi \right| \sqrt{E_{i}} \sqrt{E_{i}} \left| \psi \right\rangle \right| \tag{3.28.17b}$$

$$= \sum_{i} \left| \left\langle \hat{\phi}_{i} \middle| \hat{\psi}_{i} \right\rangle \right| \tag{3.28.17c}$$

 $<sup>^{1}</sup> See \ https://math.stackexchange.com/questions/1924742/prove-the-triangle-inequality-on-the-sphere-s2-in-mathbbr3/1925049$ 

$$\leq \sum_{i} \left\| \sqrt{E_i} \left| \phi \right\rangle \right\| \left\| \sqrt{E_i} \left| \psi \right\rangle \right\| \tag{3.28.17d}$$

$$= \sum_{i} \sqrt{\langle \phi | E_{i} | \phi \rangle} \sqrt{\langle \psi | E_{i} | \psi \rangle}$$
 (3.28.17e)

$$= \sum_{i} \sqrt{p_i^{\mathbb{E}}(\phi)} \sqrt{p_i(\psi)^{\mathbb{E}}}$$
 (3.28.17f)

so we just apply the  $\cos^{-1}$  to both sides. We have the inequality, but is it actually reached? We can take

$$\mathbb{E} = \left\{ \left| \phi \middle\rangle \middle\langle \phi \right| \right|, \left\{ \left| \phi_i \middle\rangle \middle\langle \phi_i \right| \right\} \text{span } \left| \phi \middle\rangle \middle\langle \phi \right|^{\perp} \right\}$$
 (3.28.18)

so the first term just gives us the upper bound, the other terms in the sum are 0: the inequality is saturated. We can just measure the projector associated with the state we want to know about.

**Infinitesimal distance** What is the expression of our line element  $ds = d_B(\vec{p}, \vec{p} + d\vec{p})$ ? Recall  $\sqrt{1-x} \sim 1 - x/2 - x^2/8$ :

$$\cos^{-1}\left(\sum_{i}\sqrt{p_{i}(p_{i}+\mathrm{d}p_{i})}\right) = \cos^{-1}\left(\sum_{i}p_{i}\sqrt{1+\frac{\mathrm{d}p_{i}}{p_{i}}}\right) \tag{3.28.19}$$

$$\sim \cos^{-1}\left(\sum_{i} p_{i} \left(1 - \frac{1}{2} \frac{\mathrm{d}p_{i}}{p_{i}} - \frac{1}{8} \left(\frac{\mathrm{d}p_{i}}{p_{i}}\right)^{2}\right)\right) \tag{3.28.20}$$

since the terms proportional to  $\sum_i dp_i$  must vanish for the normalization to be preserved, so we have

$$\cos ds = 1 - \frac{1}{8} \frac{dp_i^2}{p_i} \tag{3.28.21}$$

but  $\cos ds \sim 1 - 1/2 ds_B^2$ , so

$$ds_B^2 = \frac{1}{4} \sum_i \frac{(dp_i)^2}{p_i}$$
 (3.28.22)

This is the *Fisher metric*.

Take some  $\lambda \in \mathcal{M} = \{\text{manifold of control parameters of dimension N}\}$ , such that  $p_i = p_i(\lambda)$  and  $dp_i = \sum_{\mu} (\partial_{\mu} p_i) d\lambda_{\mu}$ .

Then we can write the expression for the metric directly on the parameter manifold:

$$g_{\mu\nu} = \frac{1}{4} \sum_{i} \frac{(\partial_{\mu} p_i)(\partial_{\nu} p_i)}{p_i}$$
 (3.28.23)

$$ds_B^2 = g_{\mu\nu} \, d\lambda_\mu \, d\lambda_\nu \tag{3.28.24}$$

**Parameter estimation** Take a random variable x distributed according to  $p_{\theta}(x)$  (a one-parameter distribution, with  $\theta$  as the parameter), and let  $\Theta$  be an estimator for the parameter  $\theta$ : then  $\langle \Theta \rangle = \theta = \int p_{\theta}(x) \Theta(x) \, \mathrm{d}x$ .

We prove a super-famous bound. Differentiate the previous equation wrt  $\theta$ .

$$1 = \int p'_{\theta}(x)\Theta(x) dx \qquad (3.28.25a)$$

$$= \left\langle \frac{p_{\theta}'}{p_{\theta}} \middle| \Theta \right\rangle_{p} \tag{3.28.25b}$$

**Claim 3.28.7.** The notation  $\langle f|g\rangle_p = \int p_\theta f g \, dx$  defines a scalar product.

*Proof.* The axioms for a real scalar product are symmetry, linearity, and positive definiteness. The first two come from the properties of the regular product fg; the interesting one to prove is the third. It is true since  $p_{\theta} \geq 0$ , and then  $\forall f : \int p_{\theta} f^2 \, \mathrm{d}x \geq 0$ , also (modulo equality almost everywhere)  $\langle f | f \rangle = 0 \iff f = 0$ .

We can subtract  $\theta$  from  $\Theta \to \overline{\Theta} = \Theta - \theta$  leaving the result unchanged, since it holds for any estimator: we restrict ourselves to *zero-mean* ones. This amounts to shifting the x variable, an operation which leaves the scalar product unchanged. We do this because we will get a lower bound on the of the integral of the square of  $\Theta$ , which is larger than the variance in general but equal to it in the zero mean case, so we want the tightest bound.

$$1 \le \left\| \frac{p_{\theta}'}{p_{\theta}} \right\|_{p}^{2} \|\Theta\|_{p}^{2} \tag{3.28.26}$$

$$= \left( \int p_{\theta} \frac{(p_{\theta}')^2}{p_{\theta}^2} \, \mathrm{d}x \right) \left( \int p_{\theta} (\Theta(x) - \theta)^2 \, \mathrm{d}x \right) \tag{3.28.27}$$

$$= F \text{var}\Theta \tag{3.28.28}$$

Where *F* is just the Fischer metric: in this one parameter case it just has one component. There is a factor-of-four difference between this definition and the one from before: let us accept it and move on.

$$F = \int p_{\theta} \frac{(p_{\theta}')^2}{p_{\theta}^2} \, \mathrm{d}x \tag{3.28.29}$$

This means  $var\Theta \ge F^{-1}$ : this is the *Cramer-Rao* inequality.

**Quantize it!** We would like to repeat the procedure from before, and to express the derivative of  $\text{Tr}(\rho_{\theta}\hat{\Theta}) = \theta$  as the trace of  $\rho$  times *something*, but it is difficult: we could do  $\text{Tr}(\rho_{\theta}\rho_{\theta}^{-1}\rho_{\theta}'\hat{\Theta}) = 1$ , but the derivative and the inverse of  $\rho$  do not commute!

So, we define the *Symmetric Logarithmic Derivative*: there is a single solution L to the differential equation

$$\frac{1}{2}(\rho L + L\rho) = \rho' \tag{3.28.30}$$

and we call L the SLD operator. It can be easily seen that this L satisfies  $\text{Tr}(\rho L) = \langle L \rangle = 0$ . The name comes from the regular logarithmic derivative  $\rho'/\rho = d \log \rho/dx$ .

Now we can sobstitute in the expression for  $\rho'$ :

$$\frac{1}{2}\operatorname{Tr}\left[\left(\rho L + L\rho\right)\bar{\Theta}\right] = \operatorname{Re}\operatorname{Tr}(\rho L\bar{\Theta}) \tag{3.28.31}$$

Where we separated the two parts by linearity, and to express them both in terms of  $\rho L\bar{\Theta}$  we took the adjunct of the second and applied the trace cyclic identity. Now we can take this equation in absolute value:

$$1 \le \left| \text{Tr}(\rho L\bar{\Theta}) \right|^2 = \left| \left\langle L\bar{\Theta} \right\rangle_{\rho} \right|^2 \tag{3.28.32}$$

And like before we can use the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality wrt the inner product defined by:  $\langle a,b\rangle_{\rho}=\mathrm{Tr}(\rho ab)$ .

$$1 \le \|L\|_{\rho}^{2} \|\bar{\Theta}\|_{\rho}^{2} = \text{Tr}(\rho L^{2}) Tr(\rho(\bar{\Theta} - \theta)^{2})$$
(3.28.33)

so then  $\operatorname{var}\bar{\Theta} \geq 1/F_Q$  if we define  $F_Q = \operatorname{Tr}(\rho L^2)$ .

**Claim 3.28.8.** Take 
$$\rho = \sum_i p_i |i\rangle\langle i|$$
, then  $L_{ij} = 2\langle i| \rho' |j\rangle / (p_i + p_j)$ .

*Proof.* We take the components of  $1/2(\rho L + L\rho) = \rho'$  in the eigenbasis of  $\rho$ :

$$\frac{1}{2} \langle i | \left( \rho L + L \rho \right) | j \rangle = \langle i | \rho' | j \rangle \tag{3.28.34a}$$

$$\langle i | \rho L | j \rangle + \langle i | L \rho | j \rangle = 2 \langle i | \rho' | j \rangle$$
 (3.28.34b)

$$p_{i} \langle i | L | j \rangle + p_{j} \langle i | L | j \rangle = 2 \langle i | \rho' | j \rangle$$
(3.28.34c)

from which the result follows.

So we can compute

$$F_Q = \text{Tr}(\rho L^2) = \sum_i p_i \langle i|L^2|i\rangle$$
 (3.28.35a)

$$= \sum_{ij} p_i \langle i | L | j \rangle \langle j | L | i \rangle$$
 (3.28.35b)

$$= \sum_{ij} p_i \frac{2}{p_i + p_j} \langle i | \rho' | j \rangle \langle j | \rho' | i \rangle \frac{2}{p_i + p_j}$$
(3.28.35c)

$$=4\sum_{ij}p_{i}\frac{\left|\left\langle i\right|\rho^{\prime}\left|j\right\rangle \right|^{2}}{(p_{i}+p_{j})^{2}}$$
(3.28.35d)

$$=2\sum_{ij}\frac{\left|\left\langle i\right|\rho'\left|j\right\rangle \right|^{2}}{p_{i}+p_{j}}$$
(3.28.35e)

Step (3.28.35e) is justified because the identity is satisfied pair-by-pair by the summands:

$$4\left(p_{i}\frac{\left|\langle i|\rho'|j\rangle\right|^{2}}{(p_{i}+p_{j})^{2}}+p_{j}\frac{\left|\langle j|\rho'|i\rangle\right|^{2}}{(p_{i}+p_{j})^{2}}\right)=2\left(\frac{\left|\langle i|\rho'|j\rangle\right|^{2}}{p_{i}+p_{j}}+\frac{\left|\langle j|\rho'|i\rangle\right|^{2}}{p_{j}+p_{i}}\right)$$
(3.28.36a)

$$2\left(p_i \frac{1}{(p_i + p_j)^2} + p_j \frac{1}{(p_i + p_j)^2}\right) = \frac{1}{p_i + p_j} + \frac{1}{p_j + p_i}$$
(3.28.36b)

This is Quantum Fischer. It really is the result of *classical* optimization over all the possible POVMs  $\mathbb{E}$ .

The denominator diverges! We can do something if our  $\rho$  is pure, though.

**Fischer information for pure states** Take  $\rho_{\theta} = |\psi_{\theta}\rangle\langle\psi_{\theta}|$  gound-eigenstate of a many-body system. Then:

**Claim 3.28.9.** We can calculate  $F_Q = \text{Tr}\left(\rho(\rho')^2\right)$ , which comes out to be:

$$F_Q^{pure} \propto \langle \psi_{\theta}' | \psi_{\theta}' \rangle - \left| \langle \psi_{\theta}' | \psi_{\theta} \rangle \right|^2$$
 (3.28.37)

where  $\psi' = \partial_{\theta} \psi$ .

*Proof.* Call  $\rho = |\psi\rangle\langle\psi|$ . Then  $\rho^2 = \rho$ , we can differentiate it and get  $\rho'\rho + \rho\rho' = \rho'$ : so, in the pure state case, the solution L to the Lyapunov equation is just  $\rho' = L/2$ .

The derivative of  $\rho$  is  $\rho' = |\psi\rangle\langle\psi'| + |\psi'\rangle\langle\psi|$ . We also know, by differentiating  $1 = \langle\psi|\psi\rangle$ , that  $\langle\psi|\psi'\rangle = -\langle\psi'|\psi\rangle$ . Therefore  $\langle\psi|\psi'\rangle = s$  is purely imaginary,

$$s = -s^* (3.28.38)$$

We compute  $\text{Tr}(\rho \rho' \rho') = 1/4F_Q$  (in a basis consisting of  $|\psi\rangle$  and other perpendicular vectors, whose contribution is null because of the first term  $\rho$ ) we get:

$$\operatorname{Tr}(\rho\rho'\rho') = \langle \psi | \left( |\psi\rangle\langle\psi'| + |\psi'\rangle\langle\psi| \right)^{2} |\psi\rangle$$

$$= \langle \psi | \psi\rangle \langle \psi'|\psi\rangle + \langle \psi | \psi\rangle \langle \psi'|\psi'\rangle \langle \psi | \psi\rangle^{-1}$$

$$+ \langle \psi | \psi'\rangle \langle \psi | \psi\rangle \langle \psi'|\psi\rangle + \langle \psi | \psi'\rangle \langle \psi | \psi'\rangle \langle \psi | \psi\rangle^{-1}$$

$$= \langle \psi' | \psi\rangle^{2} + \langle \psi' | \psi'\rangle + \langle \psi | \psi'\rangle \langle \psi' | \psi\rangle + \langle \psi | \psi'\rangle^{2}$$

$$= \langle \psi' | \psi'\rangle + s^{2} + (-s)^{2} + s(-s)$$

$$= \langle \psi' | \psi'\rangle + s^{2}$$

$$= \langle \psi' | \psi'\rangle - |\langle \psi | \psi'\rangle|^{2}$$

$$(3.28.39c)$$

$$(3.28.39d)$$

$$(3.28.39e)$$

$$(3.28.39e)$$

$$(3.28.39e)$$

since  $s^2$  must be real and negative.

## 3.28.2 Quantum Fischer metric

We found:

 $|\psi'\rangle$  is not a normalized wavefunction in general!

$$F_{Q} \propto \sum_{ij=1}^{d} \frac{\left| \langle i | \rho' | j \rangle \right|^{2}}{p_{i} + p_{j}} = \sup_{\mathbb{E}} F_{\text{class}}$$
 (3.28.40)

with  $F_{\text{class}} = \int dx (p')^2/p$ 

## We did not prove this! How is $F_O$ the sup of $F_{class}$ ?

If  $\rho = |\psi\rangle\langle\psi|$  is pure, we found

$$F_{\text{pure}}^{Q} \propto \langle \psi | L^{2} | \psi \rangle = \langle \psi' | \psi' \rangle - \left| \langle \psi | \psi' \rangle \right|^{2}$$
 (3.28.41a)

$$= \left\| |\psi'\rangle \right\| - \left| \langle \psi | \psi' \rangle \right|^2 = \left\| |\psi'_{\perp}\rangle \right\|^2 \tag{3.28.41b}$$

with  $|\psi'_{\perp}\rangle = (1 - |\psi\rangle\langle\psi|) |\psi'\rangle$ .

We can get the Fisher information in the pure state case from the Fubini-Study metric as well: recall equation (3.28.15): it defines a metric on the projective space  $\mathcal{PH}$ .

We call the scalar product  $\mathcal{F} = \left| \langle \psi | \phi \rangle \right|$  which appears as the argument of the arccosine *Fidelity*.

Let us consider two infinitesimally close states,  $\phi = \psi + \Delta \psi(\lambda)$  depending on some near-zero parameter  $\lambda$ , consider their Fubini-Study distance by (3.28.15) and invert the arccosine:

$$\cos d_{FS} = \left| \left\langle \psi \middle| \psi + \Delta \psi \right\rangle \right| \tag{3.28.42}$$

We can expand this to second order around ds  $\sim$  0, denoting differentiation wrt  $\lambda$  with primes:

$$1 - \frac{1}{2} ds^2 = \left| \left\langle \psi \middle| \psi + \psi' d\lambda + \frac{1}{2} \psi'' d\lambda^2 \right\rangle \right|$$
 (3.28.43)

And expand the scalar product by linearity:

$$1 - \frac{1}{2} ds^{2} = \left| \underbrace{\langle \psi | \psi \rangle}_{=1} + \langle \psi | \psi' \rangle d\lambda + \frac{1}{2} \langle \psi | \psi'' \rangle d\lambda^{2} \right|$$
(3.28.44)

Recalling equation (3.28.38) and differentiating twice we get:

$$\langle \psi | \psi' \rangle + \langle \psi' | \psi \rangle = 0 \xrightarrow{\partial/\partial\lambda} \langle \psi' | \psi' \rangle + \langle \psi | \psi'' \rangle + \langle \psi'' | \psi \rangle + \langle \psi' | \psi' \rangle = 0 \tag{3.28.45}$$

which we can rearrange into:

$$\underbrace{\langle \psi | \psi'' \rangle + \langle \psi'' | \psi \rangle}_{2 \operatorname{Re} \langle \psi | \psi'' \rangle} = -2 \langle \psi' | \psi' \rangle \tag{3.28.46a}$$

$$\operatorname{Re}\left\langle \psi \big| \psi'' \right\rangle + \left\langle \psi' \big| \psi' \right\rangle = 0 \tag{3.28.46b}$$

Now we can expand the absolute value in (3.28.44), which will equal the sum of the squares of the real and imaginary parts. Keeping only the terms of order  $d\lambda^2$  or less (that means we can discard the imaginary part of  $\langle \psi | \psi'' \rangle$ ) we get:

$$1 - \frac{\mathrm{d}s^2}{2} = \sqrt{\left(1 + \frac{1}{2}\operatorname{Re}\langle\psi|\psi''\rangle\right)^2 + \left|\langle\psi|\psi'\rangle\right|^2 d\lambda^2 + O(\mathrm{d}\lambda^3)}$$
(3.28.47a)

$$\sim \sqrt{\left(1 - \frac{1}{2} \langle \psi' | \psi' \rangle \, \mathrm{d}\lambda^2\right)^2 + \left| \langle \psi | \psi' \rangle \right|^2 \, \mathrm{d}\lambda^2}$$
 (3.28.47b)

$$\sim \sqrt{1 - \langle \psi' | \psi' \rangle \, \mathrm{d}\lambda^2 + \left| \langle \psi | \psi' \rangle \right|^2 \, \mathrm{d}\lambda^2} \tag{3.28.47c}$$

$$\sim 1 - \frac{1}{2} \left( \langle \psi' | \psi' \rangle + \left| \langle \psi | \psi' \rangle \right|^2 \right) d\lambda^2 \tag{3.28.47d}$$

Therefore we have found the expression for the **Quantum Fisher Metric** in the dim [supp  $\rho$ ] = 1 case:

$$ds^{2} = \left( \langle \psi' | \psi' \rangle + \left| \langle \psi | \psi' \rangle \right|^{2} \right) d\lambda^{2} = F_{Q}^{\text{pure}} d\lambda^{2}$$
 (3.28.48)

Now, we have assumed  $\lambda$  to be our control parameter belonging to a smooth manifold: if  $\psi = \psi(\lambda)$  is the Ground State of a hamiltonian  $H(\lambda)$  we have a map like:  $\lambda \to H(\lambda) \to$  Ground State .

#### What does $\mathbb{P}H$ mean?

So, we can look at this as a perturbative problem:  $H(\lambda) = H_0 + \lambda V$ . We remember the perturbative expression

$$\left|\widetilde{\psi}_{0}\right\rangle = \left|\psi_{0}\right\rangle + \lambda \left|\psi_{0}^{(1)}\right\rangle + O(\lambda^{2})$$
 (3.28.49)

where

$$\lambda \left| \psi_0^{(1)} \right\rangle = \lambda \sum_{n>0} \frac{\left| \psi_n^{(0)} \right\rangle \left\langle \psi_n^{(0)} \right| V \left| \psi_0^{(0)} \right\rangle}{E_n^{(0)} - E_0^{(0)}} \perp \left| \psi_0 \right\rangle \tag{3.28.50}$$

and  $H_0 |\psi_n\rangle = E_n |\psi_n\rangle$ . Since this is a first-order expression in  $\lambda$  the derivative wrt  $\lambda$  is just the sum.

With this, we can get a new formula for the metric. We write  $dH = V d\lambda$ . Now, in the expression for the Fisher Metric the term  $\langle \psi_0 | \psi_0' \rangle = 0$ . So:

$$ds^{2} = \left\| \left| \psi_{0}^{\prime} \right\rangle \right\|^{2} d\lambda^{2} = \sum_{n>0} \frac{\left| \left\langle \psi_{n} \right| dH \left| \psi_{0} \right\rangle \right|^{2}}{(E_{n} - E_{0})^{2}}$$
(3.28.51)

This is different from regular second order perturbation theory because of the square in the denominator. It is the Fubini-Study metric pulled back over the parameter manifold.

We want to do the "GR thing". We have a pseudorimannian parameter manifold, and the divergences of the metric are where the interesting physics happens: if the metric is large, some very close events are distingishable by a very large measurement.

If the first excited state is very close to the ground state, which happens in quantum phase transitions, we have a blow-up of the metric. Let us call the difference in energy between the

first excited state and the ground state  $\Delta$ . We look at the thermodinamical limit, where the system size  $N \to \infty$ .

$$\lim_{N\to\infty} \Delta_N(\lambda) \begin{cases} >0 \colon & \text{Gapped} \\ =0 \colon & \text{Gap-less: a Quantum controlled Phase Transition} \end{cases} \tag{3.28.52}$$

**Claim 3.28.10.** A gapped system with a Hamiltonian  $H(\lambda)$  parametrized by  $\lambda \in M$  has a metric which is at most extensive: for some c we have  $(ds^2 \le cN = O(N))$ .

From this it follows that if  $ds^2 = N^{\alpha}$  with  $\alpha > 1$  the system is gapless.

*Proof.* We start by writing out the metric component  $g_{\lambda\lambda}$ , and we bound it from above using the gapped system hypothesis:

$$g_{\lambda\lambda} = \frac{\mathrm{d}s^2}{\mathrm{d}\lambda^2} = \sum_{n>0} \frac{\left| \langle \psi_n | V | \psi_0 \rangle \right|^2}{(E_n - E_0)^2}$$
(3.28.53a)

$$\leq \frac{1}{\Delta^2} \sum_{n>0} \left| \left\langle \psi_n \right| V \left| \psi_0 \right\rangle \right|^2 \tag{3.28.53b}$$

$$= \frac{1}{\Delta^2} \langle \psi_0 | V \underbrace{\left( \sum_{n>0} |\psi_n \rangle \langle \psi_n| \right)}_{\mathbb{I} - |\psi_0 \rangle \langle \psi_0|} V |\psi_0 \rangle$$
 (3.28.53c)

$$= \frac{1}{\Delta^2} \left( \left\langle \psi_0 \middle| V^2 \middle| \psi_0 \right\rangle - \left| \left\langle \psi_0 \middle| V \middle| \psi_0 \right\rangle \right|^2 \right) \tag{3.28.53d}$$

$$=\frac{G(V)}{\Lambda^2} \tag{3.28.53e}$$

and if we consider a local perturbation Hamiltonian  $V = \sum_j V_j$ , where j runs over the particles in the system we get  $G_{ij} = \langle V_i V_j \rangle - \langle V_i \rangle \langle V_j \rangle$ . We are interested in the contribution of the whole system,  $\sum_{ij} G_{ij}$ . Under hypotheses of translational invarance this can be written as a sum of N correlation terms, since the element  $G_{ij}$  only depends on the difference between i and j:

$$\sum_{ij} G_{ij} = \sum_{i} \sum_{k} \langle V_i V_{i+k} \rangle - \langle V_i \rangle \langle V_{i+k} \rangle = N \sum_{k} G(k)$$
(3.28.54)

where N is the number of particles. So,

$$\left(\frac{\mathrm{d}s}{\mathrm{d}\lambda}\right)^2 \le \frac{1}{\Delta^2} N \sum_{k} G(k) \tag{3.28.55}$$

but it is known that for gapped systems G decays eponentially; so

$$\left(\frac{\mathrm{d}s}{\mathrm{d}\lambda}\right)^2 \le \frac{1}{\Delta^2} N \sum_{k} \exp\left(-\frac{k}{\mathrm{something}}\right)$$
 (3.28.56)

the point is that the sum of these those exponentials is no more than constant wrt N, so it can be bounded:

$$\left(\frac{\mathrm{d}s}{\mathrm{d}\lambda}\right)^2 \le \frac{1}{\Delta^2} N\widetilde{C} \tag{3.28.57}$$

which proves the theorem:  $ds^2/N$  is bounded in the thermodinamic limit.

How do these bounds change if we perform a differentiable reparametrization from  $H(\lambda) \to H(\widetilde{\lambda})$ ?

We can slightly rewrite equation (3.28.51) as

$$\left(\frac{\mathrm{d}s}{\mathrm{d}\lambda}\right)^{2} = \sum_{n>0} \frac{\left|\left\langle\psi_{n}\right|\partial_{\lambda}H\left|\psi_{0}\right\rangle\right|^{2}}{\left(E_{n} - E_{0}\right)^{2}} \stackrel{\mathrm{def}}{=} \chi_{F} \tag{3.28.58}$$

where we define  $\chi_F$ , the fidelity susceptibility.

$$F = \left| \left\langle \psi_0(\lambda) \middle| \psi_0(\lambda + d\lambda) \right\rangle \right| \tag{3.28.59a}$$

$$\sim 1 - \frac{1}{2} \,\mathrm{d}\lambda^2 \,\chi_F + \dots$$
 (3.28.59b)

$$\sim \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2}\,\mathrm{d}\lambda^2\,\chi_F(\lambda) + \ldots\right)$$
 (3.28.59c)

So,  $\chi_F$  can be calculated as

$$\chi_F = \lim_{\Delta\lambda \to 0} \frac{-2\log F}{\Delta\lambda^2} \tag{3.28.60}$$

We found  $\chi_F \leq c\xi^d N/\Delta^2$  where  $\xi$  is the correlation length, d is the number of dimensions and  $\Delta = \min_{n>0} E_n - E_0$ , for a gapped and local Hamiltonian (short-range).

In the general, multi-paramter case, our metric is

$$g_{\mu\nu} = \sum_{n>0} \frac{\left| \left\langle \psi_0 \right| \partial_\mu H \left| \psi_n \right\rangle \left\langle \psi_n \right| \partial_\nu H \left| \psi_0 \right\rangle \right|}{(E_n - E_0)^2}$$
(3.28.61)

We could do  $g_{\mu\nu} \to g'_{\mu\nu}$ : this will be linear, and this will not change the N dependence of  $\chi_F$  unless we do crazy things.

## **Gap-less Hamiltonians** We have $\chi_F = O(N^{\alpha})$ with $\alpha > 1$ .

If we look at F against  $\lambda$  we see something which is roughly equal to 1 almost everywhere, but has a sharp decrease corresponding to  $\lambda \sim \lambda^*$ . As N increases, the decrease gets sharper and sharper, up to a singularity for  $N \to \infty$ .

#### 3.28.3 XY model

*i* labels our spin 1/2 particles,  $\mathcal{H}_N \simeq \left(\mathbb{C}^2\right)^{\otimes N}$ 

$$H_{xy} = -\frac{1}{2} \left( \sum_{i=1}^{N} \frac{1+\gamma}{2} \sigma_i^x \sigma_{i+1}^x + \frac{1-\gamma}{2} \sigma_i^y \sigma_{i+1}^y - h \sigma_i^z \right)$$
(3.28.62)

So our parameter is  $\vec{\lambda} = (\gamma, h)$ .  $\gamma$  is the anisotropy parameter, differentiating the x and y directions, while h is the magnetic field along the z direction.

The hamiltonian (3.28.62) is exactly solvable, using fermionic operators and second quantization. We try to do this in a way that is understandable.

We introduce the operators

$$c_i^{\dagger} = \left(\prod_{l < i} \sigma_l^z\right) \sigma_i^+ \tag{3.28.63}$$

$$c_i = \left(\prod_{l \le i} \sigma_l^z\right) \sigma_i^- \tag{3.28.64}$$

Where 
$$\sigma^+ = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$
 and  $\sigma^- = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$ .

These are fermionic operators, which (Claim) satisfy the CAR (Commutation Anticommutation Relations) relations [Jordan-Wigner]

$$\left\{c_i, c_j^{\dagger}\right\} = \delta_{ij} \tag{3.28.65a}$$

$$\left\{c_i, c_j\right\} = \left\{c_i^{\dagger}, c_j^{\dagger}\right\} = 0 \tag{3.28.65b}$$

We can define the occupation number  $n_i = c_i^{\dagger} c_i = \sigma_i^{+} \sigma_i^{-} = (\mathbb{1} + \sigma_i^z)/2$ : this is 0 if the spin is -, and 1 if it is +.

So we moved from spin degrees of freedom to fermionic degrees of freedom. We define the kets  $|\alpha_1\alpha_2...\alpha_N\rangle$  and map them to  $|n_1n_2...n_N\rangle$ , where  $\alpha_i=\pm 1$  are the spin eigenvalues while  $n_i=0,1$  are the occupation eigenvalues.

We want to invert this relation (**exercise**). Doing this, the Hamiltonian gets simpler. Going to the Fourier space makes it even simpler, if we add periodic boundary conditions, since then we get translational invariance.

$$\widetilde{c_k} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \sum_{j=1}^{N} \exp\left(\frac{i2\pi kj}{N}\right) c_j \qquad k = 0, \dots, N-1$$
(3.28.66)

**Claim 3.28.11.** This is a canonical transformation, the commutation relations stay the same (CAR) for the  $\tilde{c}_k$ .

Then, we can show that the Hamiltonian (3.28.62) becomes:

$$H_{xy} = \sum_{k} \left( \varepsilon_k \widetilde{c_k}^{\dagger} \widetilde{c_k} - i\gamma \sin(2\pi k/N) \left( \widetilde{c_{-k}}^{\dagger} \widetilde{c_k}^{\dagger} - \widetilde{c_{-k}} c_k \right) \right)$$
(3.28.67)

with  $\varepsilon_k = h - \cos(2\pi k/N)$ .

So, the sequence is: spin dof  $\rightarrow$  (JW) Fermi dof  $\rightarrow$  (FT) Fermi dof  $\rightarrow$  (Bogoliubov) reciprocal lattice ground state energy.

$$H_{xy} = \sum_{k} \Lambda_k \Omega_k^{\dagger} \Omega_k + \vec{E}_0 \tag{3.28.68}$$

Where the  $\Omega$  is the new set of fermionic modes,  $n_k = \Omega_k^{\dagger} \Omega_k$ ,  $[n_k, n_{k'}] = 0$ . The spectrum then is

$$\sigma(H_{xy}) = \left\{ \sum_{k} \Lambda_k n_k + E_0 : n_k = 0, 1 \right\}$$
 (3.28.69)

while the

$$\Lambda_k = \sqrt{(h - \cos(2\pi k/N))^2 + \gamma^2 \sin^2(2\pi k/N)}$$
 (3.28.70)

It can be shown that  $[H_{xy}, \Omega_k] = -\Lambda_k \Omega_k$  and  $[H_{xy}, \Omega_k^{\dagger}] = \Lambda_k \Omega_k^{\dagger}$ , and for the ground state  $\Omega_k |\psi_0\rangle = 0$ .

So it is like the harmonic oscillator: any eigenstate  $|\psi
angle$  can be formed like

$$\left|\psi\right\rangle = \Omega_{k_1}^{\dagger} \Omega_{k_2}^{\dagger} \dots \Omega_{k_N}^{\dagger} \left|\psi_0\right\rangle \tag{3.28.71}$$

and then its energy can be found by equation (3.28.69).

Then we can see that the gap is given by  $\Delta = \min_k \Lambda_k$ , since the  $E_0$  is a constant added to all the terms.

$$\Delta = \min_{k} \sqrt{(h - \cos(2\pi k/N))^2 + \gamma^2 \sin^2(2\pi k/N)}$$
 (3.28.72)

can this get arbitrarily small?

We can do a contour plot, over the plane  $h, \gamma$ . We have three critical lines at  $h = \pm 1$  and  $\gamma = 0$  (as long as  $N \to \infty$ ).

If |h| < 1, we have a ferromagnet aligned with the x or y; if |h| > 1 instead we have a paramagnet.

There is a coupling between k and -k.

The ground state will be

$$\bigotimes_{k>0} \left( \cos \frac{\theta_k}{2} |00\rangle_{k,-k} - i \sin \frac{\theta_k}{2} |11\rangle_{k,-k} \right) \tag{3.28.73}$$

where

$$\theta_k = \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{\gamma \sin(2\pi k/N)}{h - \cos(2\pi k/N)} \right) \tag{3.28.74}$$

Now, we move in the parameter space and see how the fidelity looks like.

$$F = \left| \left\langle \psi_0(\lambda) \middle| \psi_0(\lambda') \right\rangle \right| = \prod_k \left| \cos \left( \frac{\theta_k - \theta_k'}{2} \right) \right| \tag{3.28.75}$$

If  $\Delta_k \theta \sim 0$  this becomes

$$F \sim \prod_{k} \left( 1 - \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{\Delta \theta_k}{2} \right)^2 \right) = \dots \tag{3.28.76}$$

We look at the scaling of the metric element  $g_{hh}$ , that is, we look at the distance between the eigenstates of Hamiltonians between which we change h while leaving  $\gamma$  constant. Let us use the shorthands  $S = \sin(2\pi k/N)$  and  $C = \cos(2\pi k/N)$ .

We will calculate it using equation (3.28.60):

$$-2\log F \sim -2\sum_{k}\log\left(1-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\Delta\theta_{k}}{2}\right)^{2}\right) \sim \sum_{k}\left(\frac{\Delta\theta_{k}}{2}\right)^{2} \tag{3.28.77}$$

So we get for our matrix element, modulo some factors of 2:

$$ds^{2} = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k} \left( \frac{\partial \theta_{k}}{\partial h} \right)^{2} dh^{2}$$
 (3.28.78a)

$$\left(\frac{\mathrm{d}s}{\mathrm{d}h}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k} \left(\frac{\frac{-\gamma S}{(h-C)^2}}{1 + \left(\frac{\gamma S}{h-C}\right)^2}\right)^2 \tag{3.28.78b}$$

$$= \sum_{k} \left( \frac{\gamma S}{(h - C)^2 + (\gamma S)^2} \right)^2$$
 (3.28.78c)

We can replace the sums with integrals as  $N \to \infty$ . We now call  $\tilde{k} = 2\pi k/N$ .

$$\chi_F \to \frac{N\gamma}{2\pi} \int_0^{\pi} d\tilde{k} \left[ \frac{\sin(\tilde{k})}{\left(h - \cos(\tilde{k})\right)^2 + \gamma^2 \sin^2(\tilde{k})} \right]^2$$
(3.28.79)

If there are no singularities, then this is of order N. Let us consider the case h=1, as  $\widetilde{k}\to 0$  we get something of the order

$$\frac{N}{\gamma^2 2\pi} \int_{k_{\min}}^{\pi} \frac{d\tilde{k}}{\tilde{k}^2} \tag{3.28.80}$$

this diverges for  $k_{\min} \to 0$ , but  $k_{\min}$  cannot be smaller than  $2\pi/N$  (this was an implicit condition on our sums from before): then the leading term becomes

$$\chi_F(h=1) \sim \frac{N^2}{(2\pi\gamma)^2}$$
(3.28.81)

The many-body wavefunction is much more organized (there is a lot of entanglement), and close states are very distinguishable.